

PE 1109  
.G86  
1822  
Copy 1

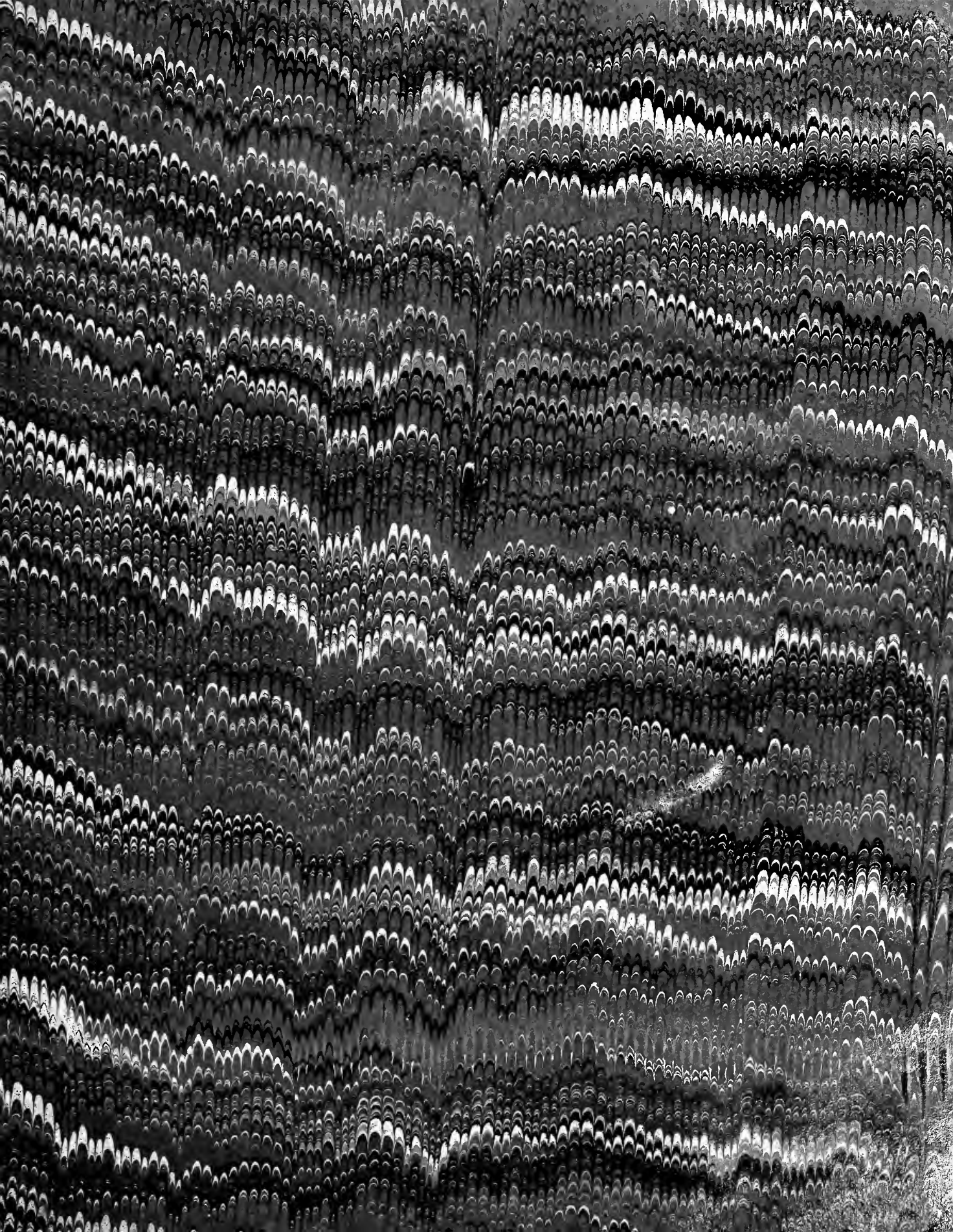
LIBRARY OF CONGRESS.

*Chas. P. E. 1104*

*Shelf G-86*

*1862*

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.



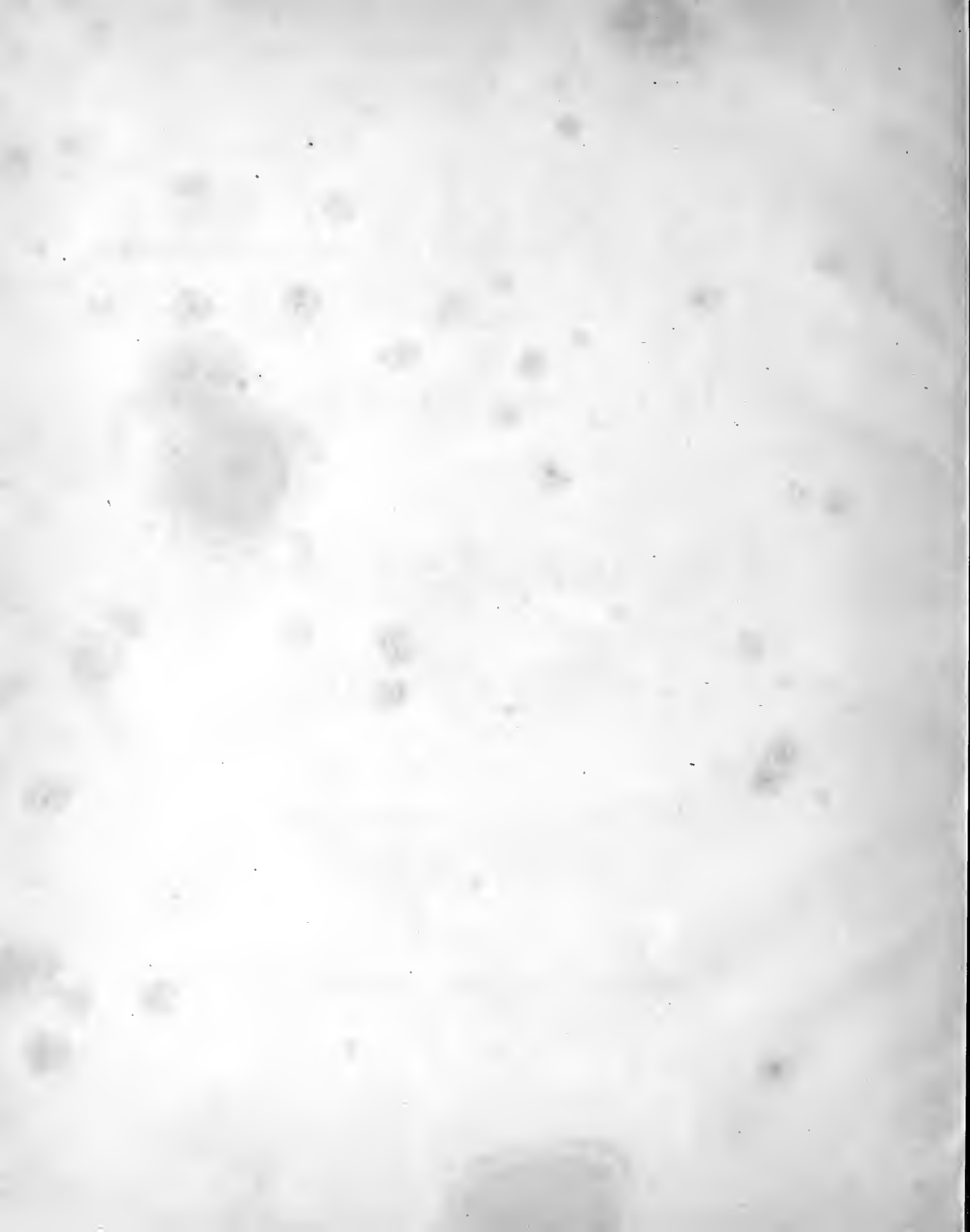














# GRAMMAR SIMPLIFIED;

OR, AN

OCULAR ANALYSIS

OF THE

**English Language.**

---

---

**BY J. GREENLEAF.**

---

---

*FOURTH, FROM THE THIRD EDITION;*

Corrected, Enlarged, and Improved, by the Author.

~~~~~  
STEREOTYPED BY E. WHITE, NEW-YORK.  
~~~~~

**NEW-YORK :**

**Published and Sold by Charles Starr;**

SOLD ALSO BY

THE PRINCIPAL BOOKSELLERS THROUGHOUT THE UNITED STATES.

Johnstone & Van Norden, Printers.

1823.

சென்னை

பெரிய கல்வெட்டு

பெரிய கல்வெட்டு

பெரிய கல்வெட்டு

பெரிய கல்வெட்டு

பெரிய கல்வெட்டு

பெரிய கல்வெட்டு

# GRAMMAR SIMPLIFIED;

OR, AN

OCULAR ANALYSIS

OF THE

**English Language.**

BY J. GREENLEAF.

*FOURTH EDITION;*

Corrected, Enlarged, and Improved, by the Author.

STEREOTYPED BY E. WHITE, NEW YORK.

NEW-YORK :

*Published and Sold by Charles Starr;*

SOLD ALSO BY

THE PRINCIPAL BOOKSELLERS THROUGHOUT THE UNITED STATES.

Johnstone & Van Norden, Printers, No. 133, Cherry-street.

1822.

# RECOMMENDATIONS.

From the Rev. Edward D. Griffin, D. D. now President of Williamstown College.

I have read, with some care, the second edition of Mr. Greenleaf's *Grammar Simplified*. There is nothing miraculous nor mysterious in it, nor in the effects which it is said to produce. The whole is comprehended in the following facts: Mr. G. has attentively studied the principles of English Grammar; and, with the exception, perhaps, of a few minor details, has exhibited them with entire correctness. His manner of expressing them is short, lucid, and striking. He has brought together a greater number of principles than is found in almost any other Grammar, and those happily selected; and has presented them in a naked form, disencumbered of all unnecessary matter. There is nothing heavy, nothing perplexed. The arrangement is new, and strikes me favourably. How much is gained by this means, and particularly by speaking so much to the eye, I could better judge were I to see the effects exemplified in a school. Much will depend on the skill and adroitness of the teacher; but I am prepared to say, let him have the lively conception and aptness to teach, which are manifested in the compilation of this Grammar; let him, in short, be Mr. Greenleaf himself, and children will be likely to become initiated sooner and more thoroughly upon this plan than upon any other which I have seen.

Newark, (N. J.) March 29, 1821.

E. D. GRIFFIN.

Having examined Mr. Greenleaf's *Grammar Simplified*, and received from his partner some explanations of his mode of instruction, I am satisfied that this system is more simple, and better calculated to impart a knowledge of the subject in a shorter period of time, than any other now in use. Very respectfully, yours, &c.

New-Brunswick, May 11, 1821.

AUGUSTUS K. TAYLOR, M. D.

We have examined, with considerable attention, a large class of pupils under the tuition of Mr. Chevelier, stated to have been engaged in the study of English Grammar about two months.

The facility which these pupils manifested in dissecting and combining any sentence given them to parse; the manner in which they gave the definitions, applied the rules of syntax, and raised objections against false construction; discovered such a practical knowledge of the science, as is not commonly attained by children of their age, by the common drudgery of teaching, in years.

The text-book in use is "*Greenleaf's Grammar Simplified*;" and from a perusal of the work itself, together with the evidence we have had of its superior excellence in assisting the learner in his progress to understand and apply every thing, thereby rendering the rudiments of Grammar a matter of amusement rather than labour, we are entirely of opinion, that Mr. Greenleaf's book is by far the best adapted for learners of any that has yet appeared on the subject. The matter of this book is essentially the same with Murray and others; but the arrangement is entirely original; the language is easy to be understood; many difficult parts in other Grammars, (as the case absolute or "independent" and others,) are here rendered perfectly familiar, and some valuable improvements made in Syntax.

New-York, May 17, 1821.

H. J. FELTUS, A. M.  
BENJ. T. ONDERDONK, A. M.

Greenleaf's "*Grammar Simplified*" we consider as deserving publick attention and patronage, because it redeems the pledge given in the title.

JOHN B. ROMEYN, D. D.  
ALEX. McLEOD, D. D.  
Z. LEWIS, A. M.

MR. STARR,

Dear Sir—I have been able to give but a cursory perusal to Greenleaf's Grammar; but I have seen enough of it to convince me that it deserves the title of "*Grammar Simplified*." For a beginner, I think it the best book of the kind which I have met with. As far as the nature of the case will admit, it has reduced the elementary principles of Grammar into the form of a chart; and thus, not only aids the memory of the pupil, but makes him, at one view, see the bearing of the several parts of speech on each other. I wish well to your effort to give the book a general circulation.

Yours, sir, respectfully,

New-York, Sept. 11, 1821.

J. M. MATHEWS, A. M.

I have examined "*Greenleaf's Grammar Simplified*," and cheerfully subscribe to the sentiments expressed by Mr. Mathews in the above recommendation.

New-York, Sept. 13, 1821.

G. SPRING, D. D.

I have given considerable attention to Mr. Greenleaf's System of Grammar, and have had the pleasure to witness it in operation among a class of young pupils. For such, I consider it decidedly the best book of Grammar with which I am acquainted. One of its peculiar excellencies is this, that the learners appear to view the study of it, in a class, as a pleasing amusement, and not, as is the case with that of the old systems, an intolerable drudgery.

New-York, Sept. 14, 1821.

J. NITCHIE.

From the Rev. Frederick Beasley, D. D. President of the University of Pennsylvania.

I have examined the plan of teaching Grammar drawn up by Mr. Greenleaf, and agree with those who have given their testimony in its favour. It is the best system I have seen for the use of elementary schools, such as those in which young ladies and young men are prepared for the higher branches of study. It is not intended to supersede the study of Murray, or any other larger Grammar which may be preferred in colleges or higher schools; but only to become preparatory to them with young persons, or those who do not expect to obtain a liberal education. Under this view of the subject, I can decidedly recommend the Grammar of Mr. Greenleaf as the best I have ever seen.

University of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia, Dec. 1, 1821.

FREDERICK BEASLEY.

At the request of Mr. Carpenter, I have read Mr. Greenleaf's "*Grammar Simplified*," and have been gratified by the perusal of it. I am not sufficiently conversant with the generally approved course of teaching English Grammar, to place entire confidence in any opinion I may form of a treatise intended to alter that course; especially without the aid afforded by observing its practical operation and effect. So far as I can trust a judgment formed without that aid, I think the Grammar offered to the publick by Mr. G. well adapted to its professed purpose. Its arrangement is clear and methodical; its rules and examples seem to be correct and well selected; it is so condensed as not to charge the memory with any useless burthen, while it contains, I think, what is necessary, to give the student a just conception of the mechanism and organization of our language. The very respectable names by which this work has been recommended, do not require the addition of mine; but, at the request of Mr. C. I cheerfully subscribe to the opinions they have given.

Richmond, Jan. 1822.

J. MARSHALL, [Chief Justice.]

I have perused "*Grammar Simplified*," and seen something of its practical application in a school. I judge it to be well calculated to facilitate and expedite the acquisition of English Grammar.

JOHN D. BLAIR, D. D.

I have looked through the little work called "*Grammar Simplified*," and am of opinion that it is well calculated for communicating, in a short time, a knowledge of the elements of English Grammar.

Jan. 15, 1822.

JOHN H. RICE, D. D.

## SOUTHERN DISTRICT OF NEW-YORK, ss.

(L. S.)

BE IT REMEMBERED, that on the tenth day of September, in the forty-sixth year of the Independence of the United States of America, Jeremiah Greenleaf, of the said district, hath deposited in this office the title of a book, the right whereof he claims as author, in the words following, to wit:

"*Grammar Simplified; or, an Ocular Analysis of the English Language. By J. Greenleaf. Third Edition: Corrected, enlarged, and improved, by the Author.*"

In conformity to the Act of the Congress of the United States, entitled "An Act for the encouragement of Learning, by securing the copies of Maps, Charts, and Books, to the authors and proprietors of such copies, during the time therein mentioned." And also to an Act, entitled "An Act, supplementary to an Act, entitled an Act for the encouragement of Learning, by securing the copies of Maps, Charts, and Books, to the authors and proprietors of such copies, during the times therein mentioned; and extending the benefits thereof to the arts of designing, engraving, and etching historical and other prints."

JAMES DILL,  
Clerk of the Southern District of New-York.

I regard Mr. Greenleaf's little treatise, entitled "*Grammar Simplified*," as calculated to remove much of the usual labour and obscurity from the study of the science it is designed to teach; and, consequently, to recommend that science in the same proportion, to the taste of learners—of mere beginners especially. Whilst I am not prepared to affirm that Mr. G.'s work has introduced any hidden principle of science, or that it exhibits a philosophical analysis of language, I cannot doubt that it is an instrument which, in the hands of competent instructors, may and will be productive of rapid and extensive advantages.

Richmond, Jan. 21, 1822.

P. V. DANIEL,  
[Lieut. Governor of Virginia.]

We, the undersigned, having examined Mr. Greenleaf's "*Grammar Simplified*," and received from Mr. Carpenter some explanations of his mode of instruction, are thoroughly convinced that his system is more simple, and is calculated to impart a knowledge of Grammar with more facility, and in a much shorter time, than any other now in use.

JOHN BUCHANAN, D. D.  
THOS. M. RANDOLPH,  
[Governor of Virginia.]  
REV. J. H. TURNER, Preceptor.

I have, with considerable attention, examined "*Grammar Simplified*," &c. by J. Greenleaf, Esq. and am much pleased to find the drudgery, usually attendant on an attempt to acquire a knowledge of this branch of literature, in his compend in a great measure removed. I consider it not only the most unexceptionable, but really the best system of Grammar, formed on the Latin model, which has heretofore met my eye. But let the worth of theories and systems be tested by their practical usefulness, and let them be appreciated accordingly. I must confess, I never witnessed such attainments from a course of eighteen lessons, as were those of my friend, Mr. McClintock's little son, of only seven years; who had been taught by Mr. Greenleaf, on the plan of his Grammar, and who was examined, by his father's request, in my presence. This is practical demonstration. "Let works bear witness." I most cordially recommend both the Grammar and the Author to a liberal and enlightened publick, to whose patronage they are, in a high degree, entitled.

Philadelphia, April 29, 1822.

SAMUEL B. WYLLIE, D. D.  
[Professor of the Latin, Greek, and Hebrew Languages, and late Professor in the University of Pennsylvania.]

Dear Sir—With the Rev. Dr. Wyllie, I most cheerfully concur in an unequivocal recommendation of your "*Grammar Simplified*," &c. and view it entitled to universal patronage, for reasons the most self-evident. The pleasurable witnessing I had of its worth, on application, from an examination of a number of your amiable female pupils, induces me, without hesitation, to express my full accordance with the Rev. Dr. Beasley, and the numerous other competent judges, in attesting its superior excellency. In anticipation of a mode of instruction, combining the "*utile cum dulci*," speedily taking place of all others, hitherto in painful practice, I do most heartily congratulate you.

WILLIAM ROGERS, D. D.  
[Quondam Professor of English, &c. in the University of Pennsylvania.]

J. GREENLEAF, ESQ.

Sir—After having thoroughly examined your "*Grammar Simplified*," I have not the least hesitation in saying, that it possesses a decided preference over all other Grammars extant. But this is really doing injustice to its merits. To say that your system of Grammar is pre-eminent to all others, is too indefinite. It is pre-eminent, in point of facility, in a very high degree. Simplified as it is, however, it will undoubtedly have to encounter much prejudice from the superficial and malevolent; especially from ignorant and pedantic schoolmasters; for I perceive it is impossible for any one to teach from your plan, unless he know something of Grammar himself; as the pupil commences parsing immediately, and "makes the application of every thing as he goes along." Whereas, from other systems, it is a very easy matter for teachers, who know nothing of Grammar themselves, to keep their pupils drilling, year after year, in Grammar, that is to say, in committing the rules, definitions, &c. Hence it is to be expected, that many teachers will keep the book out of their schools as long as possible. But a cursory perusal of the work is sufficient to convince the judicious and discerning, that it is what it professes to be, "*Grammar Simplified*," and that it is an invaluable acquisition to literature.

Truly, and with sincere gratulations, yours,

Philadelphia, May 4, 1822.

WILLIAM MANN,  
[Professor of the Latin, Greek, and Hebrew Languages.]

We, the undersigned, having witnessed the examination of a number of Mr. Greenleaf's pupils, after they had attended the very short course which he thinks necessary to give, viz. sixteen lessons, hesitate not to say, that the proficiency of his pupils exceedingly surpassed every thing we had conceived, in regard to facility in the acquisition of Grammatical learning.

The unthought-of pleasantness of the path to this very useful attainment, struck out by Mr. Greenleaf, constitutes a prominent characteristic of the pre-eminence of his system of tuition. Mr. Greenleaf's method possesses one peculiarity, which affords singular advantages. The ear, as well as the eye, is continually, and yet agreeably, impressed by the subject. A surprising exemplification of the foregoing remarks was presented in the case of a pupil of Mr. Greenleaf, who was blind. The knowledge of Etymology and Syntax, evinced in the examination of this interesting pupil, who had attended the usual course of lessons, was, in the estimation of many spectators, an ample demonstration of the superior advantages of Mr. Greenleaf's plan.

JAMES ROSS, A. M.  
[Author of Ross's Greek and Latin Grammar, Vocabulary, &c. &c.]  
REV. DR. THOMAS DUNN.  
REV. JAMES SMITH.  
REV. WILLIAM SMITH.  
DR. CHARLES W. PARISH.

Philadelphia, April 2, 1822.

I have perused the work entitled "*Grammar Simplified*," by Mr. Greenleaf. It is precisely what it declares itself, "*An Ocular Analysis of the English Language*." It is scarcely possible to enter the temple of grammatical knowledge, by a more easy, or a more beautiful inlet. In my judgment, the internal merit of the work must ensure its circulation.

May 25, 1822.

WM. STAUGHTON,  
[President of the Columbian College, in the District of Columbia.]

From the Rev. Dr. Abercrombie, author of a System of Grammar.

I have examined, with much satisfaction, Mr. Greenleaf's "*Grammar Simplified*," and hesitate not to recommend it to Teachers, as well as juvenile Students, as giving much facility to the acquisition of that necessary and useful art.

Philadelphia, Feb. 27, 1822.

JAMES ABERCROMBIE, D. D.

For other Recommendations, see the Cover.

# PREFACE.



NOTWITHSTANDING the numerous publications upon English Grammar, and the ability with which many of them are written, it is a fact, which I believe few will deny, that this science has never yet been so simplified, as to render the study of it, at once concise, easy, and inviting.

From experience in teaching this branch of learning, I was first led to believe, that a correct knowledge of the Grammar of the English Language might be obtained, in one tenth part of the time usually occupied in the attainment of it; and that, instead of a long, dry, and irksome study, it might be made, not only a very short, but a most agreeable and interesting one. With these impressions, I have constructed a grammar upon a plan entirely new, which concisely embodies all the general rules and principles, and which presents to the eye of the learner, in a simple and perspicuous manner, the whole field of this important branch of education.

In selecting materials for the work, I have consulted *Harris, Lowth, Priestley, Johnson, Sheridan, Horne Tooke, Webster, and Murray*; and, in constructing it, have endeavoured to render it plain and intelligible to the lowest capacity; and to obviate every difficulty or obscurity that might tend, in the least degree, to embarrass or perplex the mind of the learner.

In short, I am positive, that this treatise is calculated to impart a knowledge of Grammar with more facility, and in a much shorter time, than any other system heretofore published. With humble confidence, therefore, I present "*Grammar Simplified*" to an enlightened publick.

THE AUTHOR.

*New-York, September, 1821.*



# CONTENTS.

## PART I.

	PAGE.
Preface.....	3
Key, or Method of Instruction.....	7
Definitions of the Parts of Speech.....	8
Parsing Lesson 1 in the Indicative Mood.....	8
Ditto       2   “   Subjunctive Mood .....	10
Ditto       3   “   Potential Mood .....	12
Ditto       4   “   Infinitive Mood .....	14
Ditto       5   “   Imperative Mood .....	16
Ditto 6 to 12 Promiscuous Exercises 10, 12, 14, 16	
Moods and Tenses.....	9, 11, 13, 15, 17
Conjugation of Verbs .....	9, 11, 13, 15, 17
Declension of Nouns and Pronouns .....	9, 11, 13, 15, 17
Rules of Syntax.....	9, 11, 13, 15, 17
A List of the Pronominal Adjectives, } and the comparison of Adjectives }	9, 11, 13, 15, 17

## PART II.

OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR .....	18
ORTHOGRAPHY .....	18
Of the sounds of the Letters.....	18
Of Syllables, and the rules for arranging them	20
Of Words in general, and the rules for Spell-	
ing them .....	20
ETYMOLOGY .....	21
Of Articles .....	21
Of Nouns.....	21
Gender.....	21
Person.....	22
Number.....	22
Case .....	22

Of Pronouns Personal and Relative.....	22
Of Adjectives .....	23
Of Verbs .....	24
Number and Person .....	24
Moods .....	24
Tenses .....	25
Conjugations .....	25
General Remarks on the Moods and	
Tenses, and the inflection of Verbs.....	27
Catalogue of irregular verbs.....	28
Ditto       defective ditto.....	29
Of Participles.....	29
Of Adverbs .....	30
Of Prepositions.....	30
Of Conjunctions .....	30
Of Interjections .....	31
Of Derivation .....	31
SYNTAX .....	32
Rules and Notes .....	32
Specimens of Syntactical Parsing.....	39
Remarks on the Ellipsis.....	40
PROSODY .....	41
Punctuation .....	41
Directions respecting the use of the Capital	
Letters .....	42
Exercises in Punctuation.....	42
False Grammar, adapted to the Rules of Ortho-	
graphy .....	43
False Grammar, adapted to the Rules of Syntax ...	45
False Grammar, adapted to the Notes under the	
Rules of Syntax.....	46
False Grammar, adapted to the Rules of Syntax	
and their Notes, promiscuously disposed .....	47

## APPENDIX.

Of Versification .....	49
Pauses .....	49
Rhetoric and Oratory .....	49
Tropes, or Figures of Speech .....	50
Composition .....	50



# A Key to "Grammar Simplified."

THE names of the parts of speech are designated by their initials; thus, *ar* stands for article, *n* for noun, *pro* for pronoun, &c. (See the bottom of this page.) On page 8, are the definitions of the parts of speech, and on the margin of pages 8, 10, 12, 14, and 16, are parsing lessons, adapted to the several moods and tenses. The moods, tenses, and the conjugation of the verbs, together with the rules of syntax, the declension of nouns and pronouns, a list of the pronominal adjectives, and the comparison of adjectives, are respectively exhibited on the right-hand pages of the parsing lessons.

## METHOD OF INSTRUCTION.

The first thing which the learner has to do, and the only thing preparatory for parsing, is to become acquainted with the *names* of the parts of speech, and the letters which stand for them, as exhibited at the bottom of this page. When this is done, which will require but a few minutes, he will be enabled, with perfect facility, to commence parsing, in the following manner. (See page 8.)

ar    n    v  
A man loves.

INSTRUCTOR.	PUPIL.
What part of speech is <i>a</i> ?	An article.
What is an article?	An article is a word placed before nouns to limit their signification.
What kind?	The indefinite.
Why?	The indefinite article limits the noun to one of a kind, &c.
What does it belong to?	It belongs to <i>man</i> .
Give the rule.	Rule 3, Articles and adjectives belong to nouns, &c.
What part of speech is <i>man</i> ?	A noun.
What is a noun?	A noun is a word which is the name of any person, place, or thing.
What kind?	Common.
Why?	Common nouns are the names of whole sorts or species.
What gender?	The masculine.
Why?	The masculine gender denotes males.
What person?	The third.
Why?	The third person denotes the person or thing spoken of.
What number?	The singular.
Why?	The singular number denotes but one object.

INSTRUCTOR.	PUPIL.
What case?	The nominative.
Why?	The nominative case is the actor, &c.
Nominative to what?	To the verb <i>loves</i> .
Give the rule.	Rule 1, The nominative case governs the verb.
What part of speech is <i>loves</i> ?	A verb.
What is a verb?	A verb is a word which expresses action or being.
What kind of a verb?	Active.
Why?	An active verb denotes action or energy which terminates on some object.
Is it regular, or irregular?	Regular.
Why?	Regular verbs are those which form the imperfect tense, &c.
What mood?	Indicative.
Why?	The Indicative mood simply indicates or declares a thing, or asks a question.
What tense?	Present.
Why?	The present tense denotes present time.
What person and number?	Third person, singular number.
What does it agree with for its nominative?	It agrees with <i>man</i> .
Give the rule.	Rule 2, The verb must agree with, &c.

In the same manner with all the parts of speech. The instructor must refer his pupils, in the first place, to the definitions, rules, &c. He can, if he please, be at a distance from them, when they commence parsing, and take the following method.

n    v  
Charles writes.

INSTRUCTOR.	PUPIL.
What part of speech is <i>Charles</i> ?	A noun.
What is a noun?	A noun is a word which is the name of any person, place, or thing.
It is a proper noun—Why?	Proper nouns are the names of individuals.
The masculine gender—Why?	The masculine gender denotes males.
Third person—Why?	The third person denotes the person or thing spoken of.

As soon as the learner becomes sufficiently initiated into the subject to enable him to parse without giving the definitions, (and the first lesson is always sufficient for this purpose,) he may omit them and parse in the usual way: and, after going through with the several marked lessons, he may commence at Promiscuous Exercises, Parsing Lesson 10. It is necessary, however, that the definitions, rules, &c. be, eventually, thoroughly committed to memory.

The most important thing in teaching is, that the mind of the learner be perfectly free and unembarrassed; *much*, therefore, depends on the teacher. Many examples are left for him to supply. He should endeavour to give his pupils an idea of the parts of speech by as simple means as possible; and should make such illustrations as may, at any time, be deemed necessary. It is generally allowed, that a pupil will learn more from the mouth of an able instructor, than from books. As a relaxation, the class should be occasionally exercised in conjugating the verbs, declining the nouns and pronouns, comparing the adjectives, &c.

N. B. The learner should be made to understand, as soon as possible, the use of the different forms or personal terminations of verbs, as exhibited on the right-hand pages of the parsing lessons; so that he may know what is meant, by making the verb agree with its nominative in number and person.

## WALKER'S KEY TO THE SOUNDS OF THE VOWELS.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>à. The long slender English <i>a</i>, as in fâte, pâ-per, &amp;c.</li> <li>â. The long Italian <i>a</i>, as in fâr, fâ-ther, pa-pâ, mam-mâ.</li> <li>â. The broad German <i>a</i>, as in fâll, wâll, wâ-ter.</li> <li>â. The short sound of the Italian <i>a</i>, as in fât, mât, mâr-ry.</li> <li>é. The long <i>e</i>, as in mé, hére, mé-tre, mé-dium.</li> <li>ê. The short <i>e</i>, as in mét, lét, gét.</li> <li>î. The long diphthongal <i>i</i>, as in pine, tî-tle.</li> <li>î. The short simple <i>i</i>, as in pin, tî-tle.</li> <li>ô. The long open <i>o</i>, as in nô, nôte, nô-tice.</li> <li>ô. The long close <i>o</i>, as in môve, pôve.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ó. The long broad <i>o</i>, as in nôr, fôr, ôr; like the broad â.</li> <li>ó. The short broad <i>o</i>, as in nôt, hót, gót.</li> <li>û. The long diphthongal <i>u</i>, as in tùbe, cû-pid.</li> <li>û. The short simple <i>u</i>, as in tùb, cúp, súp.</li> <li>û. The middle or obtuse <i>u</i>, as in bùll, fáll, páll.</li> <li>ôi. The long broad <i>ô</i>, and the short <i>i</i>, as in ôil.</li> <li>ôû. The long broad <i>ô</i>, and the middle obtuse <i>û</i>, as in thóu, póund.</li> <li>Th. The acute or sharp <i>th</i>, as in think, thin.</li> <li>TH. The grave or flat <i>th</i>, as in this, that.</li> </ol> |
|---|--|

## ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

GRAMMAR is the art of speaking and writing correctly.

ar    n    pro    a    v    pa  
ad    pr    c    i

There are, in English, ten sorts of words, or, as they are commonly called, parts of speech; viz. the Article, Noun, Pronoun, Adjective, Verb, Participle, Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, and Interjection.

## PARSING LESSON 1.

ar n v  
A man loves.  
ar n v.  
The boys study.  
ar a n v  
A good girl learns.  
n v n  
Harriet loves Eliza.  
n v ar n  
Charles writes a letter.  
n v ar n  
Charles wrote a letter.  
n v ar n  
Charles has written a letter.  
n v ar n  
Charles had written a letter.  
n v ar n  
Charles will write a letter.  
n v ar n  
Charles will have written a letter.  
ar n v pr n  
The girls play in school.  
ar n pr n v ar n  
The paths of virtue are the paths  
pr n  
of peace.  
ar a n v n pr  
A good man worships God with  
a n  
humble confidence.  
n n pa a pr ar  
Cesar's troops, being eager for an  
n v ad pr ar n  
onset, rushed furiously on the foe.  
n ad v pa  
Men are often found transgressing  
ar n  
the laws.  
pro v c v pr pro n  
I will arise, and go to my father,  
c v pr pro n pro  
and will say unto him; Father, I  
n v pr n c  
have sinned against Heaven, and  
pr pro  
before thee.  
n ar n v ar  
Newton, the philosopher, was a  
a n  
great astronomer.  
n v ad pro a n  
Esther put on her royal apparel.  
pro v n pr ar n pr  
She obtained favour in the sight of  
ar n  
the king.  
n pa pr n v pro  
Money, taken by fraud, betrays its  
n  
possessor.  
ar n pro pro v pr n  
The ladies, whom we saw at court,  
ad v  
were genteelly dressed.  
n v ar n  
Henry had received the news  
ad ar n v  
before the messenger arrived.  
n a v ar n pro  
General, this is the sword which  
pro v pro  
you gave me.  
ar n pro pro ad  
A letter, which we have just  
v v pr ar n  
received, gives us an answer.  
a v pr n pro ad  
Some talk of subjects they do not  
v a v n  
understand; others praise virtue,  
pro ad v pro  
who do not practise it.  
ar n v pr ar n  
The men were tried by the court,  
c a pr pro v  
and each of them was fined.  
pro ad v i  
I have often been occupied, alas!  
pr n  
with trifles.  
i n ad a v pro  
O! virtue, how amiable art thou!

## ARTICLE.

An **ARTICLE** is a word placed before nouns to limit their signification. There are two articles, *a* or *an*, and *the*. *A* or *an* is called the indefinite article. *The* is called the definite article. The *indefinite article* limits the noun to one of a kind, but, generally, to no particular one. The *definite article* limits the noun to one or more particular objects.

## NOUN.

A **NOUN** is a word which is the name of any person, place, or thing. Nouns are of two kinds, common and proper. *Common nouns* are the names of whole sorts or species. *Proper nouns* are the names of individuals. To nouns belong gender, person, number, and case. **GENDER** is the distinction of sex. There are three genders, the masculine, feminine, and neuter. The *masculine gender* denotes males. The *feminine gender* denotes females. The *neuter gender* denotes things without sex. **PERSON** is the quality of the noun which modifies the verb. There are three persons, the first, second, and third. The *first person* denotes the person speaking. The *second person* denotes the person or thing spoken to. The *third person* denotes the person or thing spoken of. Nouns have but two persons, the second and third. **NUMBER** is the distinction of one from many. Nouns have two numbers, the singular and plural. The *singular number* denotes but one object. The *plural number* denotes more objects than one. **CASE** is the different state or situation of nouns with regard to other words. Nouns have three cases, the nominative, possessive, and objective. The *nominative case* is the actor, or subject of the verb. It generally comes before the verb. The *possessive case* denotes property or possession. It is generally formed by adding *s* to a noun with an apostrophe; thus, "John's book." When the plural ends in *s* the apostrophe only is added; as, "On eagles' wings." The *objective case* is the object on which the action of a verb or participle terminates, or the object of a preposition. It generally comes after the verb.

## PRONOUN.

A **PRONOUN** is a word used instead of a noun, to avoid the too frequent repetition of the same word. There are two kinds of Pronouns, personal and relative. *Personal pronouns* stand immediately for the name of some person or thing. *Relative pronouns* relate directly to some noun or personal pronoun, called the *antecedent*. They are *who*, *whose*, *whom*, *which*, *what*, and *that*. All pronouns, except the *relatives*, are *personal*. The same that belong to nouns, belong also to pronouns. They have three persons: Gender has respect only to the third person singular of the pronouns, *he*, *she*, *it*.

## ADJECTIVE.

An **ADJECTIVE** is a word which expresses some quality or property of a noun. *Pronominal adjectives* are those which are sometimes used as adjectives, and sometimes as pronouns. Adjectives are varied only to express the degrees of comparison. They have three degrees of comparison, the Positive, Comparative, and Superlative. The *positive degree* expresses the quality of an object without any increase or diminution; as, *wise*, *great*, *good*. The *comparative degree* increases or lessens the positive in signification; as, *wiser*, *greater*, *less wise*. The *superlative degree* increases or lessens the positive in the highest or lowest degree; as, *wisest*, *greatest*, *least wise*. Some adjectives do not admit of comparison; as, *chief*, *perfect*, *supreme*, &c.

## VERB.

A **VERB** is a word which expresses action or being. Verbs are of three kinds; active, passive, and neuter. They are also divided into regular, irregular, and defective. An *active verb* denotes action or energy which terminates on some object. A *passive verb* denotes action received, or endured, by the person or thing which is the nominative. It is formed by adding the perfect participle of an active verb to the verb *be* through all its various changes of number, person, mood, and tense. A *neuter verb* denotes simple being or existence, or it denotes action which is limited to the subject. *Regular verbs* are those whose imperfect tense and perfect participle end in *ed*. [unless compounded.] *Irregular verbs* are those whose imperfect tense and perfect participle do not end in *ed*. All monosyllables are irregulars. *Defective verbs* are those which are used only in some of their moods and tenses. To verbs belong mood, tense, number, and person.

## PARTICIPLE.

A **PARTICIPLE** is a word derived from a verb, and partakes of the nature of the verb, adjective, and noun. Participles are of two kinds, present and perfect. The *present participle* denotes present time, and generally ends in *ing*, as *loving*. The *perfect participle* denotes past time, and, in regular verbs, corresponds exactly with the imperfect tense; as, *loved*. The union of two or more participles is, sometimes, called a compound participle; as, *having loved*. Participles, like verbs, have an active, passive, and neuter signification.

## ADVERB.

An **ADVERB** is a word used to qualify the sense of verbs, participles, and adjectives; and, sometimes, of other adverbs. Some adverbs admit of comparison; as, *soon*, *sooner*, *soonest*.

## PREPOSITION.

A **PREPOSITION** is a word which serves to connect words, and show the relation between them.

## CONJUNCTION.

A **CONJUNCTION** is a word that is, chiefly, used to connect sentences, joining two or more simple sentences into one compound one. It, sometimes, connects only words.

## INTERJECTION.

An **INTERJECTION** is a word used to express passion or emotion; usually that which is violent or sudden; as, *Alas!* *Oh!* *Ah!* *Hush!* *Lo!* *Fie!* *O!* *Behold!*

# MOOD is the manner of representing action or being.

The *Indicative Mood* simply indicates or declares a thing, or asks a question.

	<i>Present Tense</i> denotes present time.	<i>Imperfect Tense</i> denotes past time, however distant.	<i>Perfect Tense</i> denotes past time, but also conveys an allusion to the present.	<i>Pluperfect Tense</i> denotes past time, but as prior to some other past time specified.	<i>First future Tense</i> denotes future time.	<i>Second future Tense</i> denotes future time, but as prior to some other future time specified.
	<b>TENSE</b> is the division of time.					
<b>To LOVE.</b>	<i>Singular number.</i> 1. I love, 2. Thou lovest, 3. He loves.  <i>Plural.</i> 1. We love, 2. Ye or you love, 3. They love.	<i>Singular number.</i> I loved, Thou lovedst, He loved.  <i>Plural.</i> We loved, Ye or you loved, They loved.	<i>Singular number.</i> I have* loved, Thou hast loved, He has loved.  <i>Plural.</i> We have loved, Ye or you have loved, They have loved.	<i>Singular number.</i> I had loved, Thou hadst loved, He had loved.  <i>Plural.</i> We had loved, Ye or you had loved, They had loved.	<i>Singular number.</i> I shall or will love, Thou shalt or wilt love, He shall or will love.  <i>Plural.</i> We shall or will love, Ye or you shall or will love, They shall or will love.	<i>Singular number.</i> I shall have loved, Thou shalt or wilt have loved, He shall or will have loved.  <i>Plural.</i> We shall have loved, [loved, Ye or you shall or will have They shall or will have loved.
<b>To HAVE.</b>	<i>Singular number.</i> 1. I have, 2. Thou hast, 3. He has.  <i>Plural.</i> 1. We have, 2. Ye or you have, 3. They have.	<i>Singular number.</i> I had, Thou hadst, He had.  <i>Plural.</i> We had, Ye or you had, They had.	<i>Singular number.</i> I have had, Thou hast had, He has had.  <i>Plural.</i> We have had, Ye or you have had, They have had.	<i>Singular number.</i> I had had, Thou hadst had, He had had.  <i>Plural.</i> We had had, Ye or you had had, They had had.	<i>Singular number.</i> I shall or will have, Thou shalt or wilt have, He shall or will have.  <i>Plural.</i> We shall or will have, Ye or you shall or will have, They shall or will have.	<i>Singular number.</i> I shall have had, Thou shalt or wilt have had, He shall or will have had.  <i>Plural.</i> We shall have had, [had, Ye or you shall or will have They shall or will have had.
<b>To BE.</b>	<i>Singular number.</i> 1. I am, 2. Thou art, 3. He is.  <i>Plural.</i> 1. We are, 2. Ye or you are, 3. They are.	<i>Singular number.</i> I was, Thou wast, He was.  <i>Plural.</i> We were, Ye or you were, They were.	<i>Singular number.</i> I have been, Thou hast been, He has been.  <i>Plural.</i> We have been, Ye or you have been, They have been.	<i>Singular number.</i> I had been, Thou hadst been, He had been.  <i>Plural.</i> We had been, Ye or you had been, They had been.	<i>Singular number.</i> I shall or will be, Thou shalt or wilt be, He shall or will be.  <i>Plural.</i> We shall or will be, Ye or you shall or will be, They shall or will be.	<i>Singular number.</i> I shall have been, Thou shalt or wilt have been, He shall or will have been.  <i>Plural.</i> We shall have been, [been, Ye or you shall or will have They shall or will have been.
<b>To BE LOVED.</b>	<i>Singular number.</i> 1. I am loved, 2. Thou art loved, 3. He is loved.  <i>Plural.</i> 1. We are loved, 2. Ye or you are loved, 3. They are loved.	<i>Singular number.</i> I was loved, Thou wast loved, He was loved.  <i>Plural.</i> We were loved, Ye or you were loved, They were loved.	<i>Singular number.</i> I have been loved, Thou hast been loved, He has been loved.  <i>Plural.</i> We have been loved, Ye or you have been loved, They have been loved.	<i>Singular number.</i> I had been loved, Thou hadst been loved, He had been loved.  <i>Plural.</i> We had been loved, Ye or you had been loved, They had been loved.	<i>Singular number.</i> I shall or will be loved, Thou shalt or wilt be loved, He shall or will be loved.  <i>Plural.</i> We shall or will be loved, Ye or you shall or will be loved, They shall or will be loved.	<i>Singular number.</i> I shall have been loved, Thou shalt or wilt have been loved, He shall or will have been loved.  <i>Plural.</i> We shall have been loved, Ye or you shall or will have been loved, They shall or will have been loved.

<b>RULE 1.</b> The nominative case governs the verb.	<b>RULE 2.</b> The verb must agree with its nominative in number and person.	<b>RULE 3.</b> Articles and adjectives belong to nouns, which they qualify or define.	<b>RULE 4.</b> Participles, like verbs, relate to nouns or pronouns.	<b>RULE 5.</b> Adverbs qualify verbs, participles, adjectives, and other adverbs.	<b>RULE 6.</b> Active verbs govern the objective case.
<b>RULE 7.</b> Participles have the same government, as the verbs have, from which they are derived.	<b>RULE 8.</b> Prepositions govern the objective case.	<b>RULE 9.</b> Neuter verbs have the same case after as before them.	<b>RULE 10.</b> A noun or pronoun signifying possession, is governed by the noun it possesses.	<b>RULE 11.</b> Two or more nouns signifying the same thing, are put by apposition, in the same case.	<b>RULE 12.</b> When an address is made to a person, the noun or pronoun is put in the nominative case independent.
<b>RULE 13.</b> Pronouns must agree with their antecedents, or the nouns they represent, in gender and number.	<b>RULE 14.</b> Conjunctions connect nouns and pronouns in the same case, and, generally, verbs of the like moods and tenses.	<b>RULE 15.</b> A noun or pronoun joined with a participle, and standing independent of the rest of the sentence, is in the nominative case independent.	<b>RULE 16.</b> A verb in the infinitive mood, may be governed by a verb, noun, adjective, or participle.	<b>RULE 17.</b> A verb in the infinitive mood absolute, stands independent of the remaining part of the sentence.	<b>RULE 18.</b> The verbs which follow <i>bid, dare, feel, hear, let, make, need, see, &amp;c.</i> are used in the infinitive mood without having the sign prefixed to them.

## Declension of the personal Pronouns.

FIRST PERSON.	SECOND PERSON.	THIRD PERSON.	THIRD PERSON.	THIRD PERSON.
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>
Nom. I, Poss. my or mine, Obj. me.	Nom. thou, Poss. thy or thine, Obj. thee.	Nom. he, Poss. his, Obj. him.	Nom. she, Poss. her or hers, Obj. her.	Nom. it, Poss. its, Obj. it.
<i>Plu.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>
Nom. we, Poss. our or ours, Obj. us.	Nom. ye or you, Poss. your or yours, Obj. you.	Nom. they, Poss. their or theirs, Obj. them.	Nom. they, Poss. their or theirs, Obj. them.	Nom. they, Poss. their or theirs, Obj. them.

When the noun *self* is added to the personal pronouns, as, *himself, myself, themselves, &c.* they are used indifferently in the nominative or objective case, but have no possessive.

## A list of the pronominal Adjectives.

One, other, another, each, every, either, neither, this, that, these, those, all, any, both, same, such, some, former, latter, none. Of these, *one* and *other* are declined the same as nouns. *Another* is declined, but wants the plural.

## Comparison of Adjectives.

Positive, wise; Comparative, wiser; Superlative, wisest.—Pos. amiable; Com. more amiable; Sup. most amiable.—Pos. able; Com. less able; Sup. least able.

\* Auxiliary, or helping verbs, are those by the help of which the English verbs are principally conjugated. Those which are always auxiliaries, are *may, can, must, might, could, would, should, and shall*. Those which are sometimes auxiliaries, and sometimes principal verbs, are *do, be, have, and will*.

## Declension of the relative Pronouns.

<i>Singular and Plural.</i>	<i>Singular and Plural.</i>
Nom. who, Poss. whose, Obj. whom.	Nom. whoever, Poss. whosoever, Obj. whomsoever.

*Which, what, and that*, are of both numbers, and are used in the nominative or objective case, but have no possessive; except that *whose* is sometimes used as the possessive of *which*; as, "The tree whose mortal taste brought death." *Who, whose, and whom*, are applied to persons, and *which*, to things or brutes. *That*, is applied both to persons and things. When the word *ever* or *soever* is annexed to relatives, they are, sometimes, called compound relatives.

## Declension of Nouns.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>
Nom. king Poss. king's Obj. king.	Nom. kings Poss. kings' Obj. kings.	Nom. man Poss. man's Obj. man.	Nom. men Poss. men's Obj. men.

## PARSING LESSON 2.

<sup>c</sup> <sup>pro</sup> <sup>n</sup> <sup>v</sup> <sup>a</sup> <sup>pro</sup>  
If our desires be moderate, our  
<sup>n</sup> <sup>v</sup> <sup>a</sup>  
wants will be few.

<sup>c</sup> <sup>ar</sup> <sup>n</sup> <sup>v</sup> <sup>ad</sup> <sup>a</sup>  
If the resolution were not legal.

<sup>c</sup> <sup>pro</sup> <sup>v</sup> <sup>pro</sup>  
Unless thou hast loved her.

<sup>c</sup> <sup>n</sup> <sup>v</sup> <sup>pr</sup> <sup>pro</sup>  
If John had spoken to me.

<sup>c</sup> <sup>pro</sup> <sup>v</sup> <sup>ar</sup> <sup>n</sup> <sup>pr</sup> <sup>ar</sup>  
Unless he will do the work in a  
<sup>a</sup> <sup>n</sup>  
genteel manner.

<sup>c</sup> <sup>ar</sup> <sup>n</sup> <sup>v</sup>  
If the man shall have accomplished  
<sup>pro</sup> <sup>n</sup> <sup>pr</sup> <sup>n</sup>  
his work by midsummer.

<sup>c</sup> <sup>n</sup> <sup>v</sup> <sup>pro</sup> <sup>n</sup> <sup>n</sup>  
If James has lost his money, Jack  
<sup>v</sup> <sup>pro</sup>  
will recover it.

<sup>n</sup> <sup>pa</sup> <sup>pr</sup> <sup>n</sup>  
Henry, having graduated at college,  
<sup>v</sup> <sup>pr</sup> <sup>ar</sup> <sup>n</sup> <sup>pr</sup> <sup>n</sup>  
will enter upon the study of divinity,  
<sup>c</sup> <sup>pro</sup> <sup>n</sup> <sup>v</sup>  
if his health admit.

<sup>c</sup> <sup>pro</sup> <sup>n</sup> <sup>v</sup> <sup>pr</sup> <sup>n</sup> <sup>pro</sup>  
If our friend be in trouble, we,  
<sup>pro</sup> <sup>pro</sup> <sup>v</sup> <sup>c</sup> <sup>v</sup>  
whom he knows and loves, will  
<sup>v</sup> <sup>pro</sup>  
console him.

<sup>c</sup> <sup>pro</sup> <sup>v</sup> <sup>pr</sup> <sup>n</sup> <sup>c</sup>  
If we contend about trifles, and  
<sup>ad</sup> <sup>v</sup> <sup>pro</sup> <sup>n</sup> <sup>pro</sup>  
violently maintain our opinions, we  
<sup>v</sup> <sup>ad</sup> <sup>a</sup> <sup>n</sup>  
shall gain but few friends.

<sup>c</sup> <sup>n</sup> <sup>v</sup> <sup>pro</sup> <sup>n</sup> <sup>pro</sup>  
If greatness flatter our vanity, it  
<sup>v</sup> <sup>pro</sup> <sup>n</sup>  
multiplies our dangers.

<sup>c</sup> <sup>pro</sup> <sup>v</sup> <sup>pr</sup> <sup>pro</sup> <sup>pro</sup>  
If we look around us we shall  
<sup>v</sup> <sup>c</sup> <sup>ar</sup> <sup>a</sup> <sup>n</sup> <sup>v</sup>  
perceive, that the whole universe is  
<sup>a</sup> <sup>pr</sup> <sup>a</sup> <sup>n</sup>  
full of active powers.

<sup>c</sup> <sup>pro</sup> <sup>v</sup> <sup>pro</sup> <sup>c</sup> <sup>i</sup> <sup>ad</sup> <sup>pa</sup>  
If thou art he—but oh! how fallen!

<sup>n</sup> <sup>pro</sup> <sup>v</sup> <sup>a</sup> <sup>c</sup>  
Gentlemen, you are mistaken, if  
<sup>pro</sup> <sup>v</sup> <sup>ar</sup> <sup>n</sup> <sup>pr</sup> <sup>pro</sup> <sup>v</sup>  
I be the person to whom you allude.

<sup>c</sup> <sup>pro</sup> <sup>v</sup> <sup>ad</sup> <sup>ar</sup> <sup>n</sup> <sup>pr</sup>  
If we possess not the power of  
<sup>n</sup> <sup>pro</sup> <sup>v</sup> <sup>ar</sup> <sup>n</sup>  
self-government, we shall be the prey  
<sup>pr</sup> <sup>a</sup> <sup>a</sup> <sup>n</sup>  
of every evil propensity.

<sup>n</sup> <sup>pa</sup> <sup>pro</sup> <sup>n</sup> <sup>pro</sup>  
Having resigned his office, he  
<sup>v</sup> <sup>pr</sup> <sup>a</sup> <sup>n</sup> <sup>c</sup> <sup>n</sup>  
retired to private life, if history  
<sup>v</sup> <sup>n</sup>  
speak truth.

<sup>c</sup> <sup>n</sup> <sup>v</sup> <sup>ad</sup> <sup>n</sup>  
If youth be trifled away, manhood  
<sup>v</sup> <sup>a</sup> <sup>c</sup> <sup>a</sup> <sup>n</sup>  
will be contemptible, and old age  
<sup>a</sup>  
miserable.

<sup>c</sup> <sup>pr</sup> <sup>a</sup> <sup>a</sup> <sup>n</sup> <sup>ar</sup> <sup>n</sup>  
If, from any internal cause, a man's  
<sup>n</sup> <sup>pr</sup> <sup>n</sup> <sup>v</sup> <sup>ad</sup>  
peace of mind be disturbed, in vain  
<sup>pro</sup> <sup>v</sup> <sup>pro</sup> <sup>pr</sup> <sup>n</sup> <sup>c</sup> <sup>n</sup>  
we load him with riches or honours.

<sup>pro</sup> <sup>pa</sup> <sup>pro</sup> <sup>n</sup>  
He having ended his discourse,  
<sup>ar</sup> <sup>n</sup> <sup>v</sup>  
the assembly dispersed.

<sup>c</sup> <sup>ar</sup> <sup>n</sup> <sup>ad</sup> <sup>v</sup> <sup>pro</sup>  
If the mind be well cultivated, it  
<sup>v</sup> <sup>ar</sup> <sup>n</sup> <sup>pr</sup> <sup>n</sup> <sup>c</sup> <sup>ad</sup> <sup>pro</sup>  
produces a store of fruit; if not, it  
<sup>v</sup> <sup>pr</sup> <sup>n</sup>  
is overruled with weeds.

## PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES IN PARSING.

## PARSING LESSON 6.

SCHEMES OF LIFE OFTEN ILLUSORY.

OMAR, the son of Hassan, had passed seventy-five years in honour and prosperity. The favour of three successive califs had filled his house with gold and silver; and whenever he appeared, the benedictions of the people proclaimed his passage.

Terrestrial happiness is of short continuance. The brightness of the flame is wasting its fuel; the fragrant flower is passing away in its own odours. The vigour of Omar began to fail; the curls of beauty fell from his head; strength-departed from his hands, and agility from his feet. He gave back to the calif the keys of trust, and the seals of secrecy; and sought no other pleasure for the remains of life, than the converse of the wise, and the gratitude of the good.

The powers of his mind were yet unimpaired. His chamber was filled by visitants, eager to catch the dictates of experience, and officious to pay the tribute of admiration.—Caled, the son of the viceroy of Egypt, entered every day early, and retired late. He was beautiful and eloquent: Omar admired his wit, and loved his docility. "Tell me," said Caled, "thou to whose voice nations have listened, and whose wisdom is known to the extremities of Asia, tell me how I may resemble Omar the prudent. The arts by which thou hast gained power and preserved it, are to thee no longer necessary or useful; impart to me the secret of thy conduct, and teach me the plan upon which thy wisdom has built thy fortune."

"Young man," said Omar, "it is of little use to form plans of life. When I took my first survey of the world in my twentieth year, having considered the various conditions of mankind, in an hour of solitude, I said thus to myself, leaning against a cedar, which spread its branches over my head: 'Seventy years are allowed to man: I have yet fifty remaining. Ten years I will allot to the attainment of knowledge, and ten I will pass in foreign countries; I shall be learned, and therefore shall be honoured; every city will shout at my arrival, and every student solicit my friendship. Twenty years thus passed, will store my mind with images, which I shall be busy, through the rest of my life, in combining and comparing. I shall revel in inexhaustible accumulations of intellectual riches; I shall find new pleasures for every moment; and shall never more be weary of myself. I will not, however, deviate too far from the beaten track of life, but will try what can be found in female delicacy. I will marry a wife beautiful as the Houries, and wise as Zobeide; with her I will live twenty years within the suburbs of Bagdat, in every pleasure that wealth can purchase, and fancy can invent. I will then retire to a rural dwelling; pass my days in obscurity and contemplation; and lie silently down on the bed of death. Through my life it shall be my settled resolution, that I will never depend upon the smile of princes; that I will never stand exposed to the artifices of courts; I will never pant for public honours, nor disturb my quiet with the affairs of state.' Such was the scheme of life, which I impressed indelibly upon my memory.

"The first part of my ensuing time was to be spent in search of knowledge, and I know not how I was diverted from my design. I had no visible impediments without, nor any ungovernable passions within. I regarded knowledge as the highest honour, and the most engaging pleasure; yet day stole upon day, and month glided after month, till I found that seven years of the first ten had vanished, and left nothing behind them. I now postponed my purpose of travelling; for why should I go abroad when so much remained to be learned at home? I immured myself for four years, and studied the laws of the empire. The fame of my skill reached the judges; I was found able to speak upon doubtful questions; and was commanded to stand at the footstool of the calif. I was heard with attention; I was consulted with confidence; and the love of praise fastened on my heart.

"I still wished to see distant countries; listened with rapture to the relations of travellers; and resolved some time to ask my dismissal, that I might feast my soul with novelty: but my presence was always necessary; and the stream of business hurried me along. Sometimes I was afraid lest I should be charged with ingratitude; but I still proposed to travel, and therefore would not confine myself by marriage.

"In my fiftieth year, I began to suspect that the time of travelling was past; and thought it best to lay hold on the felicity yet in my power, and indulge myself in domestic pleasures. But at fifty no man easily finds a woman beautiful as the Houries, and wise as Zobeide. I inquired and rejected, consulted and deliberated, till the sixty-second year made me ashamed of wishing to marry. I had now nothing left but retirement; and for retirement I never found a time, till disease forced me from public employment.

"Such was my scheme, and such has been its consequence. With an insatiable thirst for knowledge, I trifled away the years of improvement; with a restless desire of seeing different countries, I have always resided in the same city; with the highest expectation of connubial felicity, I have lived unmarried; and with unalterable resolutions of contemplative retirement, I am going to die within the walls of Bagdat."

DR. JOHNSON



# MOOD is the manner of representing action or being.

The *Subjunctive Mood* expresses action or being in a doubtful or conditional manner.

<i>Present Tense</i> denotes present time.	<i>Imperfect Tense</i> denotes past time, how- ever distant.	<i>Perfect Tense</i> denotes past time, but also conveys an allu- sion to the present.	<i>Pluperfect Tense</i> denotes past time, but as prior to some other past time specified.	<i>First future Tense</i> denotes future time.	<i>Second future Tense</i> denotes future time, but as prior to some other future time specified.
<b>TENSE</b> is the division of time.					
<i>Singular number.</i> 1. If I love, 2. If thou love, 3. If he love.	<i>Singular number.</i> If I loved, If thou lovedst, If he loved.	<i>Singular number.</i> If I have* loved, If thou hast loved, If he has loved.	<i>Singular number.</i> If I had loved, If thou hadst loved, If he had loved.	<i>Singular number.</i> If I shall or will love, If thou shalt or wilt love, If he shall or will love.	<i>Singular number.</i> If I shall have loved, [loved], If thou shalt or wilt have If he shall or will have loved.
<i>Plural.</i> 1. If we love, 2. If ye or you love, 3. If they love.	<i>Plural.</i> If we loved, If ye or you loved, If they loved.	<i>Plural.</i> If we have loved, If ye or you have loved, If they have loved.	<i>Plural.</i> If we had loved, If ye or you had loved, If they had loved.	<i>Plural.</i> If we shall or will love, If ye or you shall or will love, If they shall or will love.	<i>Plural.</i> If we shall have loved, [loved], If ye or you shall or will have If they shall or will have
<i>Singular number.</i> 1. If I have, 2. If thou have, 3. If he have.	<i>Singular number.</i> If I had, If thou hadst, If he had.	<i>Singular number.</i> If I have had, If thou hast had, If he has had.	<i>Singular number.</i> If I had had, If thou hadst had, If he had had.	<i>Singular number.</i> If I shall or will have, If thou shalt or wilt have, If he shall or will have.	<i>Singular number.</i> If I shall have had, [had], If thou shalt or wilt have had, If he shall or will have had.
<i>Plural.</i> 1. If we have, 2. If ye or you have, 3. If they have.	<i>Plural.</i> If we had, If ye or you had, If they had.	<i>Plural.</i> If we have had, If ye or you have had, If they have had.	<i>Plural.</i> If we had had, If ye or you had had, If they had had.	<i>Plural.</i> If we shall or will have, If ye or you shall or will have, If they shall or will have.	<i>Plural.</i> If we shall have had, [had], If ye or you shall or will have If they shall or will have had.
<i>Singular number.</i> 1. If I be, 2. If thou be, 3. If he be.	<i>Singular number.</i> If I were, If thou wert, If he were.	<i>Singular number.</i> If I have been, If thou hast been, If he has been.	<i>Singular number.</i> If I had been, If thou hadst been, If he had been.	<i>Singular number.</i> If I shall or will be, If thou shalt or wilt be, If he shall or will be.	<i>Singular number.</i> If I shall have been, [been], If thou shalt or wilt have If he shall or will have been.
<i>Plural.</i> 1. If we be, 2. If ye or you be, 3. If they be.	<i>Plural.</i> If we were, If ye or you were, If they were.	<i>Plural.</i> If we have been, If ye or you have been, If they have been.	<i>Plural.</i> If we had been, If ye or you had been, If they had been.	<i>Plural.</i> If we shall or will be, If ye or you shall or will be, If they shall or will be.	<i>Plural.</i> If we shall have been, [been], If ye or you shall or will have If they shall or will have been.
<i>Singular number.</i> 1. If I be loved, 2. If thou be loved, 3. If he be loved.	<i>Singular number.</i> If I were loved, If thou wert loved, If he were loved.	<i>Singular number.</i> If I have been loved, If thou hast been loved, If he has been loved.	<i>Singular number.</i> If I had been loved, If thou hadst been loved, If he had been loved.	<i>Singular number.</i> If I shall or will be loved, If thou shalt or wilt be loved, If he shall or will be loved.	<i>Singular number.</i> If I shall have been loved, If thou shalt or wilt have been If he shall or will have been
<i>Plural.</i> 1. If we be loved, 2. If ye or you be loved, 3. If they be loved.	<i>Plural.</i> If we were loved, If ye or you were loved, If they were loved.	<i>Plural.</i> If we have been loved, If ye or you have been loved, If they have been loved.	<i>Plural.</i> If we had been loved, If ye or you had been loved, If they had been loved.	<i>Plural.</i> If we shall or will be loved, If ye or you shall or will be If they shall or will be loved.	<i>Plural.</i> If we shall have been loved, If ye or you shall or will have If they shall or will have been

<b>RULE 1.</b> The nominative case gov- erns the verb.	<b>RULE 2.</b> The verb must agree with its nominative in number and person.	<b>RULE 3.</b> Articles and adjectives be- long to nouns, which they qualify or define.	<b>RULE 4.</b> Participles, like verbs, re- late to nouns or pronouns.	<b>RULE 5.</b> Adverbs qualify verbs, par- ticiples, adjectives, and other adverbs.	<b>RULE 6.</b> Active verbs govern the objective case.
<b>RULE 7.</b> Participles have the same government, as the verbs have, from which they are derived.	<b>RULE 8.</b> Prepositions govern the ob- jective case.	<b>RULE 9.</b> Neuter verbs have the same case after as before them.	<b>RULE 10.</b> A noun or pronoun signi- fying possession, is governed by the noun it possesses.	<b>RULE 11.</b> Two or more nouns signi- fying the same thing, are put, by apposition, in the same case.	<b>RULE 12.</b> When an address is made to a person, the noun or pro- noun is put in the nominative case independent.
<b>RULE 13.</b> Pronouns must agree with their antecedents, or the nouns they represent, in gen- der and number.	<b>RULE 14.</b> Conjunctions connect nouns and pronouns in the same case, and, generally, verbs of the like moods and tenses.	<b>RULE 15.</b> A noun or pronoun joined with a participle, and stand- ing independent of the rest of the sentence, is in the nomi- native case independent.	<b>RULE 16.</b> A verb in the infinitive mood, may be governed by a verb, noun, adjective, or par- ticiple.	<b>RULE 17.</b> A verb in the infinitive mood absolute, stands inde- pendent of the remaining part of the sentence.	<b>RULE 18.</b> The verbs which follow <i>bid</i> , <i>dare</i> , <i>feel</i> , <i>hear</i> , <i>let</i> , <i>make</i> , <i>need</i> , <i>see</i> , &c. are used in the infin- itive mood without having the sign prefixed to them.

## Declension of the personal Pronouns.

FIRST PERSON.	SECOND PERSON.	THIRD PERSON.	THIRD PERSON.	THIRD PERSON.
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>
Nom. I, Poss. my or mine, Obj. me.	Nom. thou, Poss. thy or thine, Obj. thee.	Nom. he, Poss. his, Obj. him.	Nom. she, Poss. her or hers, Obj. her.	Nom. it, Poss. its, Obj. it.
<i>Plu.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>
Nom. we, Poss. our or ours, Obj. us.	Nom. ye or you, Poss. your or yours, Obj. you.	Nom. they, Poss. their or theirs, Obj. them.	Nom. they, Poss. their or theirs, Obj. them.	Nom. they, Poss. their or theirs, Obj. them.

When the noun *self* is added to the personal pronouns, as, *himself*, *myself*, *itself*, *themselves*, &c. they are used in-  
differently in the nominative or objective case, but have no possessive.

## A list of the pronominal Adjectives.

One, other, another, each, every, either, neither, this, that, these, those, all, any, both, same, such, some, former,  
latter, none. Of these, *one* and *other* are declined the same as nouns. *Another* is declined, but wants the plural.

## Comparison of Adjectives.

*Positive*, wise; *Comparative*, wiser; *Superlative*, wisest.—*Pos.* amiable; *Com.* more amiable; *Sup.* most amiable.—  
*Pos.* able; *Com.* less able; *Sup.* least able.

\* *Auxiliary*, or *helping verbs*, are those by the help of which the English verbs are principally conjugated. Those which are always auxiliaries, are *may*, *can*, *must*, *might*, *could*, *would*, *should*,  
and *shall*. Those which are sometimes auxiliaries, and sometimes principal verbs, are *do*, *be*, *have*, and *will*.

## Declension of the relative Pronouns.

<i>Singular and Plural.</i>	<i>Singular and Plural.</i>	<i>Singular and Plural.</i>
Nom. who, Poss. whose, Obj. whom.	Nom. whoever, Poss. whosoever, Obj. whomsoever.	Nom. whosoever, Poss. whosoever, Obj. whomsoever.

*Which*, *what*, and *that*, are of both numbers, and are  
used in the nominative or objective case, but have no pos-  
sessive; except that *whose* is sometimes used as the pos-  
sessive of *which*; as, "The tree whose mortal taste brought  
death." *Who*, *whose*, and *whom*, are applied to persons,  
and *which*, to things or brutes. *That*, is applied both to  
persons and things. When the word *ever* or *soever* is an-  
nexed to relatives, they are, sometimes, called *compound*  
*relatives*.

## Declension of Nouns.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>
Nom. king Poss. king's Obj. king.	Nom. kings Poss. kings' Obj. kings.	Nom. man Poss. man's Obj. man.	Nom. men Poss. men's Obj. men.

## PARSING LESSON 3.

<sup>n</sup> Charles <sup>v</sup> is <sup>ad</sup> not <sup>a</sup> insincere ; <sup>c</sup> and  
<sup>ad</sup> therefore, <sup>pro</sup> we may trust <sup>pro</sup> him.

<sup>pro</sup> It must be so ; <sup>v</sup> Plato, <sup>n</sup> thou reason-  
<sup>ad</sup> est well.

<sup>pro</sup> We could not accomplish the  
<sup>n</sup> business in time.

<sup>pro</sup> It was my direction <sup>n</sup> he should  
<sup>v</sup> submit.

<sup>n</sup> Amanda was ill, but I thought she  
<sup>v</sup> might live.

<sup>pro</sup> Can we, untouched by gratitude,  
<sup>v</sup> view the profusion of good, which the  
<sup>a</sup> Almighty hand bestows around us ?

<sup>pro</sup> We can resist the allurements of  
<sup>n</sup> vice.

<sup>pro</sup> I may have misunderstood him.

<sup>ar</sup> The man might have finished the  
<sup>n</sup> work sooner, but he could not have  
<sup>v</sup> done it better.

<sup>pro</sup> I gave him good advice, but he  
<sup>ad</sup> would not hearken to it.

<sup>pro</sup> They might have been honoured.  
<sup>ar</sup> The man, who is faithfully attach-  
<sup>pr</sup> ed to religion, may be relied on with  
<sup>a</sup> humble confidence.

<sup>a</sup> This author's sentiments must be  
<sup>v</sup> mistaken by his critic.

<sup>n</sup> Thousands, whom indolence has  
<sup>v</sup> sunk into contemptible obscurity,  
<sup>n</sup> might have come forward to useful-  
<sup>c</sup> ness and honour, if idleness had not  
<sup>v</sup> frustrated the effects of all their  
<sup>n</sup> powers.

<sup>pro</sup> We may rest assured, that by the  
<sup>a</sup> steady pursuit of virtue we shall  
<sup>v</sup> obtain and enjoy it.

<sup>ar</sup> The physician may administer the  
<sup>n</sup> medicine, but Providence alone can  
<sup>v</sup> bless it.

<sup>pa</sup> Having exposed himself in different  
<sup>n</sup> climes, he may have lost his health.

<sup>ar</sup> The scholar's diligence must se-  
<sup>v</sup> cure the tutor's approbation.

<sup>pro</sup> She being absent, the business was  
<sup>v</sup> attended to by others.

## PARSING LESSON 7.

THE SHEPHERD AND THE PHILOSOPHER.

REMOTE from cities liv'd a swain,  
 Unvex'd with all the cares of gain ;  
 His head was silver'd o'er with age,  
 And long experience made him sage ;  
 In summer's heat and winter's cold,  
 He fed his flock and penn'd the fold ;  
 His hours in cheerful labour flew,  
 Nor envy nor ambition knew :  
 His wisdom and his honest fame  
 Through all the country rais'd his name.

A deep philosopher (whose rules  
 Of moral life were drawn from schools)  
 The shepherd's homely cottage sought,  
 And thus explor'd his reach of thought.

" Whence is thy learning ? Hath thy toil  
 O'er books consum'd the midnight oil ?  
 Hast thou old Greece and Rome survey'd,  
 And the vast sense of Plato weigh'd ?  
 Hath Socrates thy soul refin'd ?  
 And hast thou fathom'd Tully's mind ?  
 Or, like the wise Ulysses, thrown  
 By various fates on realms unknown,  
 Hast thou through many cities stray'd,  
 Their customs, laws, and manners weigh'd ?"

The shepherd modestly reply'd,  
 " I ne'er the paths of learning try'd ;  
 Nor have I roam'd in foreign parts,  
 To read mankind, their laws and arts ;  
 For man is practis'd in disguise ;  
 He cheats the most discerning eyes.  
 Who by that search shall wiser grow ?  
 By that ourselves we never know.  
 The little knowledge I have gain'd,  
 Was all from simple nature drain'd ;  
 Hence my life's maxims took their rise,  
 Hence grew my settled hate to vice.  
 The daily labours of the bee  
 Awake my soul to industry.  
 Who can observe the careful ant,  
 And not provide for future want ?

My dog (the truest of his kind)  
 With gratitude inflames my mind :  
 I mark his true, his faithful way,  
 And in my service copy Tray.  
 In constancy and nuptial love,  
 I learn my duty from the dove.  
 The hen, that from the chilly air,  
 With pious wing, protects her care,  
 And ev'ry fowl that flies at large,  
 Instruct me in a parent's charge.

" From nature too I take my rule,  
 To shun contempt and ridicule.  
 I never, with important air,  
 In conversation overbear.  
 Can grave and formal pass for wise,  
 When men the solemn owl despise ?  
 My tongue within my lips I rein ;  
 For who talks much must talk in vain.  
 We from the wordy torrent fly :  
 Who listens to the chatt'ring pie ?  
 Nor would I, with felonious flight,  
 By stealth invade my neighbour's right :  
 Rapacious animals we hate ;  
 Kites, hawks, and wolves deserve their fate.  
 Do not we just abhorrence find  
 Against the toad and serpent kind ?  
 But envy, calumny and spite,  
 Bear stronger venom in their bite.  
 Thus ev'ry object of creation  
 Can furnish hints to contemplation ;  
 And, from the most minute and mean,  
 A virtuous mind can morals glean."

" Thy fame is just," the sage replies ;  
 " Thy virtue proves thee truly wise."  
 Pride often guides the author's pen,  
 Books as affected are as men :  
 But he who studies nature's laws,  
 From certain truth his maxims draws :  
 And those without our schools, suffice  
 To make men moral, good, and wise.

GAY.

## PARSING LESSON 8.

NOTHING FORMED IN VAIN.

LET no presuming impious railer tax  
 Creative wisdom ; as if aught was form'd  
 In vain, or not for admirable ends.  
 Shall little haughty ignorance pronounce  
 His works unwise, of which the smallest part  
 Exceeds the narrow vision of her mind ?  
 As if, upon a full-proportion'd dome,  
 On swelling columns heav'd, the pride of art !  
 A critic-fly, whose feeble ray scarce spreads  
 An inch around, with blind presumption bold,  
 Should dare to tax the structure of the whole.  
 And lives the man, whose universal eye

Has swept at once th' unbounded scheme of things,  
 Mark'd their dependence so, and firm accord,  
 As with unfault'ring accent to conclude,  
 That this availeth nought ? Has any seen  
 The mighty chain of beings, less'ning down  
 From infinite perfection, to the brink  
 Of dreary nothing, desolate abyss !  
 From which astonish'd thought, recoiling, turns ?  
 Till then alone let zealous praise ascend,  
 And hymns of holy wonder, to that power,  
 Whose wisdom shines as lovely in our minds,  
 As on our smiling eyes his servant sun.

THOMSON.



# MOOD is the manner of representing action or being.

The *Potential Mood* declares the power, liberty, possibility, or necessity, of action or being.

Present Tense denotes present time.	Imperfect Tense denotes past time, however distant.	Perfect Tense denotes past time, but also conveys an allusion to the present.	Pluperfect Tense denotes past time, but as prior to some other past time specified.	First future Tense denotes future time.	Second future Tense denotes future time, but as prior to some other future time specified.
<b>TENSE</b> is the division of time.					
<i>Singular number.</i> 1. I may, can, or must love, 2. Thou mayst, c. or m. love, 3. He may, c. or m. love. <i>Plural.</i> 1. We may, can, or must love, 2. Ye or you m. c. or m. love, 3. They m. c. or m. love.	<i>Singular number.</i> I might, could, would, or should love, Thou mightst, c. w. or s. love, He might, c. w. or s. love. <i>Plural.</i> We might, could, would, or should love, Ye or you m. c. w. or s. love, They m. c. w. or s. love.	<i>Singular number.</i> I may, can, or must have loved, Thou mayst, c. or m. have loved, He may, c. or m. have loved. <i>Plural.</i> We may, c. or m. have loved, Ye or you m. c. or m. have loved, They m. c. or m. have loved.	<i>Singular number.</i> I might, could, would, or should have loved, Thou mightst, c. w. or s. have loved, He m. c. w. or s. have loved. <i>Plural.</i> We m. c. w. or s. have loved, Ye or you m. c. w. or s. have loved, They m. c. w. or s. have loved.		
<i>Singular number.</i> 1. I may, can, or must have, 2. Thou mayst, c. or m. have, 3. He may, c. or m. have. <i>Plural.</i> 1. We may, can, or must have, 2. Ye or you m. c. or m. have, 3. They m. c. or m. have.	<i>Singular number.</i> I might, could, would, or should have, Thou mightst, c. w. or s. have, He might, c. w. or s. have. <i>Plural.</i> We might, could, would, or should have, Ye or you m. c. w. or s. have, They m. c. w. or s. have.	<i>Singular number.</i> I may, can, or must have had, Thou mayst, canst, or must have had, He may, can, or must have had. <i>Plural.</i> We may, can, or must have had, Ye or you may, can, or must have had, They m. c. or m. have had.	<i>Singular number.</i> I might, could, would, or should have had, Thou mightst, c. w. or s. have had, He might, c. w. or s. have had. <i>Plural.</i> We m. c. w. or s. have had, Ye or you m. c. w. or s. have had, They m. c. w. or s. have had.		
<i>Singular number.</i> 1. I may, can, or must be, 2. Thou mayst, c. or m. be, 3. He may, c. or m. be. <i>Plural.</i> 1. We may, can, or must be, 2. Ye or you m. c. or m. be, 3. They m. c. or m. be.	<i>Singular number.</i> I might, could, would, or should be, Thou mightst, c. w. or s. be, He might, c. w. or s. be. <i>Plural.</i> We might, could, would, or should be, Ye or you m. c. w. or s. be, They m. c. w. or s. be.	<i>Singular number.</i> I may, can, or must have been, Thou mayst, c. or m. have been, He may, c. or m. have been. <i>Plural.</i> We may, c. or m. have been, Ye or you m. c. or m. have been, They m. c. or m. have been.	<i>Singular number.</i> I might, could, would, or should have been, Thou mightst, c. w. or s. have been, He m. c. w. or s. have been. <i>Plural.</i> We m. c. w. or s. have been, Ye or you m. c. w. or s. have been, They m. c. w. or s. have been.		
<i>Singular number.</i> 1. I may, can, or must be loved, [be loved], 2. Thou mayst, c. or m. be loved, [be loved], 3. He m. c. or m. be loved, [be loved]. <i>Plural.</i> 1. We may, c. or m. be loved, [be loved], 2. Ye or you m. c. or m. be loved, [be loved], 3. They m. c. or m. be loved, [be loved].	<i>Singular number.</i> I might, could, would, or should be loved, [be loved], Thou mightst, c. w. or s. be loved, [be loved], He might, c. w. or s. be loved, [be loved]. <i>Plural.</i> We m. c. w. or s. be loved, [be loved], Ye or you m. c. w. or s. be loved, [be loved], They m. c. w. or s. be loved, [be loved].	<i>Singular number.</i> [loved]. I may, can, or must have been loved, [loved], Thou mayst, c. or m. have been loved, [loved], He may, c. or m. have been loved, [loved]. <i>Plural.</i> [loved]. We may, c. or m. have been loved, [loved], Ye or you m. c. or m. have been loved, [loved], They m. c. or m. have been loved, [loved].	<i>Singular number.</i> [loved]. I might, c. w. or s. have been loved, [loved], Thou mightst, c. w. or s. have been loved, [loved], He might, c. w. or s. have been loved, [loved]. <i>Plural.</i> [loved]. We m. c. w. or s. have been loved, [loved], Ye or you m. c. w. or s. have been loved, [loved], They m. c. w. or s. have been loved, [loved].		

<b>RULE 1.</b> The nominative case governs the verb.	<b>RULE 2.</b> The verb must agree with its nominative in number and person.	<b>RULE 3.</b> Articles and adjectives belong to nouns, which they qualify or define.	<b>RULE 4.</b> Participles, like verbs, relate to nouns or pronouns.	<b>RULE 5.</b> Adverbs qualify verbs, participles, adjectives, and other adverbs.	<b>RULE 6.</b> Active verbs govern the objective case.
<b>RULE 7.</b> Participles have the same government, as the verbs have, from which they are derived.	<b>RULE 8.</b> Prepositions govern the objective case.	<b>RULE 9.</b> Neuter verbs have the same case after as before them.	<b>RULE 10.</b> A noun or pronoun signifying possession, is governed by the noun it possesses.	<b>RULE 11.</b> Two or more nouns signifying the same thing, are put, by apposition, in the same case.	<b>RULE 12.</b> When an address is made to a person, the noun or pronoun is put in the nominative case independent.
<b>RULE 13.</b> Pronouns must agree with their antecedents, or the nouns they represent, in gender and number.	<b>RULE 14.</b> Conjunctions connect nouns and pronouns in the same case, and, generally, verbs of the like moods and tenses.	<b>RULE 15.</b> A noun or pronoun joined with a participle, and standing independent of the rest of the sentence, is in the nominative case independent.	<b>RULE 16.</b> A verb in the infinitive mood, may be governed by a verb, noun, adjective, or participle.	<b>RULE 17.</b> A verb in the infinitive mood absolute, stands independent of the remaining part of the sentence.	<b>RULE 18.</b> The verbs which follow <i>bid</i> , <i>dare</i> , <i>feel</i> , <i>hear</i> , <i>let</i> , <i>make</i> , <i>need</i> , <i>see</i> , &c. are used in the infinitive mood without having the sign to prefixed to them.

## Declension of the personal Pronouns.

FIRST PERSON.	SECOND PERSON.	THIRD PERSON.	THIRD PERSON.	THIRD PERSON.
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>
Nom. I, Poss. my or mine, Obj. me.	Nom. thou, Poss. thy or thine, Obj. thee.	Nom. he, Poss. his, Obj. him.	Nom. she, Poss. her or hers, Obj. her.	Nom. it, Poss. its, Obj. it.
<i>Plu.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>
Nom. we, Poss. our or ours, Obj. us.	Nom. ye or you, Poss. your or yours, Obj. you.	Nom. they, Poss. their or theirs, Obj. them.	Nom. they, Poss. their or theirs, Obj. them.	Nom. they, Poss. their or theirs, Obj. them.

When the noun *self* is added to the personal pronouns, as, *himself*, *myself*, *itself*, *themselves*, &c. they are used indifferently in the nominative or objective case, but have no possessive.

## A list of the pronominal Adjectives.

One, other, another, each, every, either, neither, this, that, these, those, all, any, both, same, such, some, former, latter, none. Of these, *one* and *other* are declined the same as nouns. *Another* is also declined, but wants the plural.

## Comparison of Adjectives.

Positive, wise; Comparative, wiser; Superlative, wisest.—Pos. amiable; Com. more amiable; Sup. most amiable.—Pos. able; Com. less able; Sup. least able.

\* Auxiliary, or helping verbs, are those by the help of which the English verbs are principally conjugated. Those which are sometimes auxiliaries, and sometimes principal verbs, are *do*, *be*, *have*, and *will*. Those which are always auxiliaries, are *may*, *can*, *must*, *might*, *could*, *would*, *should*, and *shall*.

## Declension of the relative Pronouns.

<i>Singular and Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. who, Poss. whose, Obj. whom.	Nom. whoever, Poss. whosoever, Obj. whomever.	Nom. whosoever, Poss. whosoever, Obj. whomsoever.

*Which*, *what*, and *that*, are of both numbers, and are used in the nominative or objective case, but have no possessive; except that *whose* is sometimes used as the possessive of *which*; as, "The tree whose mortal taste brought death." *Who*, *whoso*, and *whom*, are applied to persons, and *which*, to things or brutes. *That*, is applied both to persons and things. When the word *ever* or *soever* is annexed to relatives; they are, sometimes, called compound relatives.

## Declension of Nouns.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>
Nom. king Poss. king's Obj. king.	Nom. kings Poss. kings' Obj. kings.	Nom. man Poss. man's Obj. man.	Nom. men Poss. men's Obj. men.

## PARSING LESSON 4.

pr pro u pro v n  
In our travels we saw much to  
v c n v  
approve, and much to condemn.

pro v a v ar  
It is delightful to contemplate the  
n pr u  
goodness of Providence.

pro v ar n pro v ar u  
I am the person who owns a fault  
pa c pro v  
committed, and who disdains to  
v pro  
conceal it.

pro v v pro  
He was known to have loved her.  
ar a n v a n v  
A good man is unwilling to give  
n pr a c n  
pain to man or beast.

ar u a a n v  
The good parent's greatest joy is  
v pro n a c a  
to see his children wise and virtuous.

pro pro ad ad v c  
Whom can we so justly love as  
pro pro v  
them who have endeavoured to make  
pro a c a  
us wise and happy?

pro v ad v pro n  
We dare not leave our studies  
pr n  
without permission.

pro n c n v ar  
Our parents and teachers are the  
n pro pro v pr ar  
persons whom we ought in a par-  
a u v  
ticular manner to respect.

pro v ad v n v  
We need not urge Charles to do  
n pro v v pro  
good, he loves to do it.

To have been admired, availed  
pro ad  
him little.

pro pa a v  
They being willing to improve,  
ar a v a  
the study was rendered agreeable.

n v pro v  
Compassion prompted us to relieve  
n a  
Norman's wants.

ar a n ad a c  
A young man, so learned and vir-  
a v v ar ad a  
tuous, promises to be a very useful  
n pr u  
member of society.

c n c a  
Neither threatenings nor any pro-  
n v pro v ar  
mises could make him violate the  
n  
truth.

c a n v v  
Though bad men attempt to turn  
n pr n pro v pro  
virtue into ridicule, they honour it  
pr ar n pr pro n  
at the bottom of their hearts.

n pro v  
Sir Charles, are you prepared to  
v pr a a  
answer to these accusations?

pro pa pr ar n  
He, being loved by the duke, ex-  
v v c i ar  
pected to be pardoned; but ah! the  
n pr n  
delusions of hope!

To have been censured by so ju-  
a ar n ad  
dicious a friend, would have greatly  
v pro  
discouraged me.

v ar n pro v pr n  
To confess the truth, I was in fault.

## PARSING LESSON 9.

PROVIDENCE VINDICATED IN THE PRESENT  
STATE OF MAN.

HEAV'N from all creatures hides the book of fate,  
All but the page prescrib'd, their present state;  
From brutes what men, from men what spirits know,  
Or who could suffer being here below?  
The lamb thy riot dooms to bleed to-day,  
Had he thy reason, would he skip and play?  
Pleas'd to the last, he crops the flow'ry food,  
And licks the hand just rais'd to shed his blood.  
Oh, blindness to the future! kindly given,  
That each may fill the circle mark'd by Heav'n;  
Who sees with equal eye, as God of all,  
A hero perish, or a sparrow fall;  
Atoms or systems into ruin hurl'd,  
And now a bubble burst, and now a world.

Hope humbly then; with trembling pinions soar;  
Wait the great teacher death; and God adore.  
What future bliss, he gives not thee to know,  
But gives that hope to be thy blessing now.  
Hope springs eternal in the human breast:  
Man never is, but always to BE blest:  
The soul, uneasy and confin'd from home,  
Rests and expatiates in a life to come.

Lo, the poor Indian! whose untutor'd mind  
Sees God in clouds, or hears him in the wind;  
His soul proud science never taught to stray  
Far as the Solar Walk or Milky Way;  
Yet simple nature to his hope has giv'n,  
Behind the cloud-topt hill, an humbler heav'n;  
Some safer world in depth of woods embrac'd,  
Some happier island in the wat'ry waste;  
Where slaves once more their native land behold,  
No fiends torment, no Christians thirst for gold,  
To BE, contents his natural desire;  
He asks no angel's wing, no seraph's fire:  
But thinks, admitted to that equal sky,  
His faithful dog shall bear him company.

Go, wiser thou! and in thy scale of sense,  
Weigh thy opinion against Providence;  
Call imperfection what thou fanciest such,  
Say here he gives too little, there too much.  
In pride, in reas'ning pride, our error lies;  
All quit their sphere, and rush into the skies.  
Pride still is aiming at the blest abodes,  
Men would be angels, angels would be gods.  
Aspiring to be gods, if angels fell,  
Aspiring to be angels, men rebel;  
And who but wishes to invert the laws  
Of ORDER, sins against th' ETERNAL CAUSE.

POPE.

## PARSING LESSON 10.

SELFISHNESS REPROVED.

HAS God, thou fool! work'd solely for thy good,  
Thy joy, thy pastime, thy attire, thy food?  
Who for thy table feeds the wanton fawn,  
For him as kindly spreads the flow'ry lawn.

Is it for thee the lark ascends and sings?  
Joy tunes his voice, joy elevates his wings.  
Is it for thee the linnet pours his throat?  
Loves of his own, and raptures swell the note.  
The bounding steed you pompously bestride,  
Shares with his lord the pleasure and the pride.  
Is thine alone the seed that strews the plain?  
The birds of heav'n shall vindicate their grain.  
Thine the full harvest of the golden year?  
Part pays, and justly, the deserving steer.  
The hog, that ploughs not, nor obeys thy call,  
Lives on the labours of this lord of all.

Know, nature's children all divide her care;  
The fur that warms a monarch, warm'd a bear.  
While man exclaims, "See all things for my use!"  
"See man for mine!" replies a pamper'd goose.  
And just as short of reason he must fall,  
Who thinks all made for one, not one for all.

Grant that the pow'rful still the weak control;  
Be man the wit and tyrant of the whole;  
Nature that tyrant checks: he only knows,  
And helps another creature's wants and woes.  
Say, will the falcon, stooping from above,  
Smit with her varying plumage, spare the dove?  
Admires the jay the insect's gilded wings?  
Or hears the hawk when Philomela sings?  
Man cares for all: to birds he gives his woods,  
To beasts his pastures, and to fish his floods.  
For some his int'rest prompts him to provide,  
For more his pleasure, yet for more his pride.  
All feed on one vain patron, and enjoy  
Th' extensive blessing of his luxury.  
That very life his learned hunger craves,  
He saves from famine, from the savage saves;  
Nay, feasts the animal he dooms his feast;  
And, till he ends the being, makes it blest;  
Which sees no more the stroke, nor feels the pain,  
Than favour'd man by touch ethereal slain.  
The creature had his feast of life before;  
Thou too must perish when thy feast is o'er! POPE.

## PARSING LESSON 11.

THE DYING CHRISTIAN.

VITAL spark of heav'nly flame!  
Quit, O quit this mortal frame:  
Trembling, hoping, ling'ring, flying;  
O the pain, the bliss of dying!  
Cease, fond nature, cease thy strife,  
And let me languish into life.  
Hark! they whisper, angels say,  
"Sister spirit, come away;"  
What is this absorbs me quite?  
Steals my senses, shuts my sight,  
Drowns my spirit, draws my breath?  
Tell me, my soul, can this be death?  
The world recedes, it disappears!  
Heav'n opens on my eyes—my ears  
With sounds seraphic ring!  
Lend, lend your wings, I mount! I fly!  
O grave, where is thy victory?  
O death, where is thy sting?

POPE.

## MOOD is the manner of representing action or being.

The *Infinitive-Mood* expresses a thing in a general and unlimited manner; having no nominative, consequently, neither number nor person.

<i>Present Tense</i> denotes present time. <b>TENSE</b> is the division of time.	<i>Imperfect Tense</i> denotes past time, however distant.	<i>Perfect Tense</i> denotes past time, but also conveys an allusion to the present.	<i>Pluperfect Tense</i> denotes past time, but as prior to some other past time specified.	<i>First future Tense</i> denotes future time.	<i>Second future Tense</i> denotes future time, but as prior to some other future time specified.
<i>To LOVE.</i>  <i>Participle.</i> <i>Present.</i> Loving.		<i>To have loved.</i>  <i>Participle.</i> <i>Perfect.</i> Loved. <i>Compound Perfect.</i> Having loved.			
<i>To HAVE.</i>  <i>Participle.</i> <i>Present.</i> Having.		<i>To have had.</i>  <i>Participle.</i> <i>Perfect.</i> Had. <i>Compound Perfect.</i> Having had.			
<i>To BE.</i>  <i>Participle.</i> <i>Present.</i> Being.		<i>To have been.</i>  <i>Participle.</i> <i>Perfect.</i> Been. <i>Compound Perfect.</i> Having been.			
<i>To BE LOVED.</i>  <i>Participle.</i> <i>Present.</i> Being loved.		<i>To have been loved.</i>  <i>Participle.</i> <i>Perfect.</i> Loved. <i>Compound Perfect.</i> Having been loved.			

<b>RULE 1.</b> The nominative case governs the verb.	<b>RULE 2.</b> The verb must agree with its nominative in number and person.	<b>RULE 3.</b> Articles and adjectives belong to nouns, which they qualify or define.	<b>RULE 4.</b> Participles, like verbs, relate to nouns or pronouns.	<b>RULE 5.</b> Adverbs qualify verbs, participles, adjectives, and other adverbs.	<b>RULE 6.</b> Active verbs govern the objective case.
<b>RULE 7.</b> Participles have the same government, as the verbs have, from which they are derived.	<b>RULE 8.</b> Prepositions govern the objective case.	<b>RULE 9.</b> Neuter verbs have the same case after as before them.	<b>RULE 10.</b> A noun or pronoun signifying possession, is governed by the noun it possesses.	<b>RULE 11.</b> Two or more nouns signifying the same thing, are put, by apposition, in the same case.	<b>RULE 12.</b> When an address is made to a person, the noun or pronoun is put in the nominative case independent.
<b>RULE 13.</b> Pronouns must agree with their antecedents, or the nouns they represent, in gender and number.	<b>RULE 14.</b> Conjunctions connect nouns and pronouns in the same case, and, generally, verbs of the like moods and tenses.	<b>RULE 15.</b> A noun or pronoun joined with a participle, and standing independent of the rest of the sentence, is in the nominative case independent.	<b>RULE 16.</b> A verb in the infinitive mood, may be governed by a verb, noun, adjective, or participle.	<b>RULE 17.</b> A verb in the infinitive mood absolute, stands independent of the remaining part of the sentence.	<b>RULE 18.</b> The verbs which follow <i>bid, dare, feel, hear, let, make, need, see, &amp;c.</i> are used in the infinitive mood without having the sign to prefixed to them.

### Declension of the personal Pronouns.

FIRST PERSON.	SECOND PERSON.	THIRD PERSON.	THIRD PERSON.	THIRD PERSON.
<i>Sing.</i> <i>Nom.</i> I, <i>Poss.</i> my or mine, <i>Obj.</i> me.	<i>Sing.</i> <i>Nom.</i> thou, <i>Poss.</i> thy or thine, <i>Obj.</i> thee.	<i>Sing.</i> <i>Nom.</i> he, <i>Poss.</i> his, <i>Obj.</i> him.	<i>Sing.</i> <i>Nom.</i> she, <i>Poss.</i> her or hers, <i>Obj.</i> her.	<i>Sing.</i> <i>Nom.</i> it, <i>Poss.</i> its, <i>Obj.</i> it.
<i>Plu.</i> <i>Nom.</i> we, <i>Poss.</i> our or ours, <i>Obj.</i> us.	<i>Plu.</i> <i>Nom.</i> ye or you, <i>Poss.</i> your or yours, <i>Obj.</i> you.	<i>Plu.</i> <i>Nom.</i> they, <i>Poss.</i> their or theirs, <i>Obj.</i> them.	<i>Plu.</i> <i>Nom.</i> they, <i>Poss.</i> their or theirs, <i>Obj.</i> them.	<i>Plu.</i> <i>Nom.</i> they, <i>Poss.</i> their or theirs, <i>Obj.</i> them.

When the noun *self* is added to the personal pronouns, as, *himself, myself, itself, themselves, &c.* they are used indifferently in the nominative or objective case, but have no possessive.

### A list of the pronominal Adjectives.

One, other, another, each, every, either, neither, this, that, these, those, all, any, both, same, such, some, former, latter, none. Of these, *one* and *other* are declined the same as nouns. *Another* is also declined, but wants the plural.

### Comparison of Adjectives.

*Positive*, wise; *Comparative*, wiser; *Superlative*, wisest.—*Pos.* amiable; *Com.* more amiable; *Sup.* most amiable.—*Pos.* able; *Com.* less able; *Sup.* least able.

\* *Auxiliary*, or *helping verbs*, are those by the help of which the English verbs are principally conjugated. Those which are always auxiliaries, are *may, can, must, might, could, would, should, and shall*. Those which are sometimes auxiliaries, and sometimes principal verbs, are *do, be, have, and will*.

### Declension of the relative Pronouns.

<i>Singular and Plural.</i>		
<i>Sing.</i> <i>Nom.</i> who, <i>Nom.</i> whoever, <i>Nom.</i> whosoever,	<i>Plu.</i> <i>Poss.</i> whose, <i>Poss.</i> whosoever, <i>Poss.</i> whosesoever,	<i>Obj.</i> whom, <i>Obj.</i> whomever, <i>Obj.</i> whomsoever.
<i>Which, what, and that</i> , are of both numbers, and are used in the nominative or objective case, but have no possessive; except that <i>whose</i> is sometimes used as the possessive of <i>which</i> ; as, "The tree <i>whose</i> mortal taste brought death." <i>Who, whose, and whom</i> , are applied to persons, and <i>which</i> , to things or brutes. <i>That</i> , is applied both to persons and things. When the word <i>ever</i> or <i>soever</i> is annexed to relatives, they are, sometimes, called <i>compound relatives</i> .		

### Declension of Nouns.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> king	<i>Nom.</i> kings	<i>Nom.</i> man	<i>Nom.</i> men
<i>Poss.</i> king's	<i>Poss.</i> kings'	<i>Poss.</i> man's	<i>Poss.</i> men's
<i>Obj.</i> king	<i>Obj.</i> kings	<i>Obj.</i> man	<i>Obj.</i> men



## PARSING LESSON 5.

pro n v ar n pr pro  
My son, hear the counsel of thy  
n c v ad ar n pr pro  
father, and forsake not the law of thy  
n  
mother.

pr pro a n v a  
In your whole behaviour, be hum-  
c a a c pr pro a  
ble and obliging; and in your youth-  
n n v a n  
ful amusements, let no unfairness be  
v  
found.

n v ad ar a  
Guard! Drag here the Spanish  
n n ad v ar  
prisoner Alonzo! Quick! bring the  
n ad  
traitor here.

v pr pro n a a  
Engrave on your mind this sacred  
n v pr a c pro v  
rule; "Do unto others as you wish  
c pro v pr pro  
that they should do unto you."

n v pro v pro v  
Henry, let me hear you read.

v a n pr ar  
Let no compliance with the im-  
a n pr a ad  
moderate mirth of others, ever be-  
v pro pr a n  
tray you into profane sallies.

v pr a a c a  
Beware of those rash and dangerous  
n pro ad  
connexions which afterward may  
v pro pr n  
load you with dishonour.

n v ar n pr n  
To correct the spirit of discontent,  
v pro v ad a pro v  
let us consider how little we deserve,  
c ad a pro v  
and how much we enjoy.

ad pro v a n  
When you behold wicked men  
pa pr n c pa  
multiplying in number, and increas-  
pr n v ad c  
ing in power, imagine not that Pro-  
n v pro  
vidence favours them.

v pro v ad pro n c  
Leave me, take off his chains and  
v pro ad  
use him well.

ad ad v a a  
No more! unbind that trembling  
n v pro v pro v ad  
wretch; let him depart; it is well  
pro v ar n c pro  
he should report the mercies which  
pro v pr a n i  
we show to insolent defiance. Hark!  
pro n v v pro  
our troops are moving. Follow me,  
n  
friends.

v pro ar n v pro  
Art thou a parent? Teach thy  
n n n  
children obedience.

v pro ar n c ar n  
Art thou a son or a daughter?  
v pro n v a pr  
Obey thy parents, be grateful to  
pro v pr ar n n  
them; think of a mother's tender-  
c ar n  
ness, and a father's care.

a n v n c a v  
This book is Peter's, and that is  
n c pro v a c pro  
Eliza's; but his is better than hers.

a pr ar n v a pro  
Each of the apples is tart; yours  
v a c pro c pro c pro  
is better than his or hers, but mine  
v a c a  
is better than either.

## PARSING LESSON 12.

DISCOURSE BETWEEN ADAM AND EVE, RETIRING TO REST.

Now came still ev'ning on, and twilight gray  
Had in her sober livery all things clad.

Silence accompanied; for beast and bird,

They to their grassy couch, these to their nests,

Were slunk; all but the wakeful nightingale;

She all night long her am'rous descant sung:

Silence was pleas'd. Now glow'd the firmament

With living sapphires: Hesperus, that led

The starry host, rode brightest, till the moon,

Rising in clouded majesty, at length,

Apparent queen, unveil'd her peerless light,

And o'er the dark her silver mantle threw.

When Adam thus to Eve: "Fair consort, th' hour

Of night, and all things now retir'd to rest,

Mind us of like repose; since God hath set

Labour and rest, as day and night to men

Successive; and the timely dew of sleep,

Now falling with soft slumb'rous weight, inclines

Our eye-lids. Other creatures all day long

Rove idle, unemploy'd, and less need rest;

Man hath his daily work of body or of mind

Appointed, which declares his dignity,

And the regard of heav'n on all his ways;

While other animals unactive range,

And of their doings God takes no account.

To-morrow, ere fresh morning streak the east

With first approach of light, we must be risen,

And at our pleasant labour; to reform

Yon flow'ry arbours, yonder alleys green,

Our walk at noon with branches overgrown,

That mock our scant manuring, and require

More hands than ours to lop their wanton growth.

Those blossoms also, and those dropping gums,

That lie bestrown, unsightly and unsmooth,

Ask riddance, if we mean to tread with ease.

Meanwhile, as Nature wills, night bids us rest."

To whom thus Eve, with perfect beauty adorn'd:

"My author and disposer, what thou bidst

Unargu'd I obey; so God ordains.

With thee conversing I forget all time,

All seasons and their change, all please alike.

Sweet is the breath of morn, her rising sweet,

With charm of earliest birds; pleasant the sun

When first on this delightful land he spreads

His orient beams, on herb, tree, fruit, and flower,

Glist'ning with dew; fragrant the fertile earth

After soft showers; and sweet the coming on

Of grateful ev'ning mild; then silent night,

With this her solemn bird, and this fair moon,

And these the gems of heav'n, her starry train:

But neither breath of morn, when she ascends

With charms of earliest birds; nor rising sun

On this delightful land; nor herb, fruit, flower,

Glist'ning with dew; nor fragrance after showers;

Nor grateful ev'ning mild; nor silent night

With this her solemn bird; nor walk by moon,

Or glittering star-light—without thee is sweet.

But wherefore all night long shine these? for whom

This glorious sight, when sleep hath shut all eyes?"

To whom our gen'ral ancestor replied;

"Daughter of God and man, accomplish'd Eve,

These have their course to finish round the earth,

By morrow ev'ning; and from land to land,

In order, though to nations yet unborn,

Minist'ring light prepar'd, they set and rise;

Lest total darkness should by night regain

Her old possession, and extinguish life

In nature and all things; which these soft fires

Not only enlighten, but with kindly heat

Of various influence, foment and warm,

Temper or nourish; or in part shed down

Their stellar virtue on all kinds that grow

On earth, made hereby apter to receive

Perfection from the sun's more potent ray.

These then, though unbeheld in deep of night,

Shine not in vain; nor think, though men were none,

That heav'n would want spectators, God want praise.

Millions of spiritual creatures walk the earth

Unseen, both when we wake and when we sleep.

All these with ceaseless praise his works behold,

Both day and night. How often, from the steep

Of echoing hill, or thicket, have we heard

Celestial voices to the midnight air,

Sole, or responsive each to other's note,

Singing their great Creator! Oft in bands,

While they keep watch, or nightly rounding walk

With heav'nly touch of instrumental sounds,

In full harmonic number join'd, their songs

Divide the night, and lift our thoughts to heav'n."

Thus talking hand in hand alone they pass'd

On to their blissful bow'r: it was a place

Chos'n by the sov'reign Planter, when he fram'd

All things to man's delightful use; the roof

Of thickest covert was inwoven shade

Laurel and myrtle, and what higher grew

Of firm and fragrant leaf; on either side

Acanthus, and each odorous bushy shrub,

Fenc'd up the verdant wall; each beauteous flow'r,

Iris all hues, roses and jessamine, [wrought

Rear'd high their flourish'd heads between, and

Mosaic;

Thus, at their shady lodge arriv'd, both stood,

Both turn'd; and under open sky ador'd

The God that made both sky, air, earth, and heav'n,

Which they beheld, the moon's resplendent globe,

And starry pole. "Thou also mad'st the night,

Maker Omnipotent, and thou the day,

Which we, in our appointed work employ'd,

Have finish'd, happy in our mutual help,

And mutual love, the crown of all our bliss

Ordain'd by thee; and this delicious place

For us too large; where thy abundance wants

Partakers, and uncropt falls to the ground.

But thou hast promis'd from us two a race,

To fill the earth, who shall with us extol

Thy goodness infinite, both when we wake,

And when we seek, as now, thy gift of sleep."

MILTON.

# MOOD is the manner of representing action or being.

The *Imperative Mood* commands, exhorts, or entreats.

<i>Present Tense</i> denotes present time.	<i>Imperfect Tense</i> denotes past time, however distant.	<i>Perfect Tense</i> denotes past time, but also conveys an allusion to the present.	<i>Pluperfect Tense</i> denotes past time, but as prior to some other past time specified.	<i>First future Tense</i> denotes future time.	<i>Second future Tense</i> denotes future time, but as prior to some other future time specified.
<b>TENSE</b> is the division of time.  <i>Singular number.</i> <b>To LOVE.</b> 2. Love, love thou, or do thou love.  <i>Plural.</i> 2. Love, love ye or you, or do ye or you love.  <i>Singular number.</i> <b>To HAVE.</b> 2. Have, have thou, or do thou have.  <i>Plural.</i> 2. Have, have ye or you, or do ye or you have.  <i>Singular number.</i> <b>To BE.</b> 2. Be, be thou, or do thou be.  <i>Plural.</i> 2. Be, be ye or you, or do ye or you be.  <i>Singular number.</i> <b>To BE LOVED.</b> 2. Be loved, be thou loved, or do thou be loved.  <i>Plural.</i> 2. Be loved, be ye or you loved, or do ye or you be loved.					

<b>RULE 1.</b> The nominative case governs the verb.	<b>RULE 2.</b> The verb must agree with its nominative in number and person.	<b>RULE 3.</b> Articles and adjectives belong to nouns, which they qualify or define.	<b>RULE 4.</b> Participles, like verbs, relate to nouns or pronouns.	<b>RULE 5.</b> Adverbs qualify verbs, participles, adjectives, and other adverbs.	<b>RULE 6.</b> Active verbs govern the objective case.
<b>RULE 7.</b> Participles have the same government, as the verbs have, from which they are derived.	<b>RULE 8.</b> Prepositions govern the objective case.	<b>RULE 9.</b> Neuter verbs have the same case after as before them.	<b>RULE 10.</b> A noun or pronoun signifying possession, is governed by the noun it possesses.	<b>RULE 11.</b> Two or more nouns signifying the same thing, are put, by apposition, in the same case.	<b>RULE 12.</b> When an address is made to a person, the noun or pronoun is put in the nominative case independent.
<b>RULE 13.</b> Pronouns must agree with their antecedents, or the nouns they represent, in gender and number.	<b>RULE 14.</b> Conjunctions connect nouns and pronouns in the same case, and, generally, verbs of the like moods and tenses.	<b>RULE 15.</b> A noun or pronoun joined with a participle, and standing independent of the rest of the sentence, is in the nominative case independent.	<b>RULE 16.</b> A verb in the infinitive mood, may be governed by a verb, noun, adjective, or participle.	<b>RULE 17.</b> A verb in the infinitive mood absolute, stands independent of the remaining part of the sentence.	<b>RULE 18.</b> The verbs which follow <i>bid</i> , <i>dare</i> , <i>feel</i> , <i>hear</i> , <i>let</i> , <i>make</i> , <i>need</i> , <i>see</i> , &c. are used in the infinitive mood without having the sign prefixed to them.

## Declension of the personal Pronouns.

FIRST PERSON.	SECOND PERSON.	THIRD PERSON.	THIRD PERSON.	THIRD PERSON.
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>
Nom. I,	Nom. thou,	Nom. he,	Nom. she,	Nom. it,
Poss. my or mine,	Poss. thy or thine,	Poss. his,	Poss. her or hers,	Poss. its,
Obj. me.	Obj. thee.	Obj. him.	Obj. her.	Obj. it.
<i>Plu.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>
Nom. we,	Nom. ye or you,	Nom. they,	Nom. they,	Nom. they,
Poss. our or ours,	Poss. your or yours,	Poss. their or theirs,	Poss. their or theirs,	Poss. their or theirs,
Obj. us.	Obj. you.	Obj. them.	Obj. them.	Obj. them.

When the noun *self* is added to the personal pronouns, as, *himself*, *myself*, *itself*, *themselves*, &c. they are used differently in the nominative or objective case, but have no possessive.

## A list of the pronominal Adjectives.

One, other, another, each, every, either, neither, this, that, these, those, all, any, both, same, such, some, former, latter, none. Of these, *one* and *other* are declined the same as nouns. *Another* is also declined, but wants the plural.

## Comparison of Adjectives.

Positive, wise; Comparative, wiser; Superlative, wisest.—Pos. amiable; Com. more amiable; Sup. most amiable.—Pos. able; Com. less able; Sup. least able.

\* Auxiliary, or helping verbs, are those by the help of which the English verbs are principally conjugated. Those which are always auxiliaries, are *may*, *can*, *must*, *might*, *could*, *would*, *should*, and *shall*. Those which are sometimes auxiliaries, and sometimes principal verbs, are *do*, *be*, *have*, and *will*.

## Declension of the relative Pronouns.

<i>Singular and Plural.</i>		
Nom. who,	Poss. whose,	Obj. whom.
Nom. whoever,	Poss. whoseever,	Obj. whomever.
Nom. whosoever,	Poss. whosoever,	Obj. whomsoever.

*Which*, *what*, and *that*, are of both numbers, and are used in the nominative or objective case, but have no possessive; except that *whose* is sometimes used as the possessive of *which*; as, "The tree *whose* mortal taste brought death." *Who*, *whose*, and *whom*, are applied to persons, and *which*, to things or brutes. *That*, is applied both to persons and things. When the word *ever* or *soever* is annexed to relatives, they are, sometimes, called compound relatives.

## Declension of Nouns.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>
Nom. king	Nom. kings	Nom. man	Nom. men
Poss. king's	Poss. kings'	Poss. man's	Poss. men's
Obj. king	Obj. kings	Obj. man	Obj. men

# ENGLISH GRAMMAR.



**G**RAMMAR is the art of speaking and writing correctly.

It is divided into four parts; *Orthography*, *Etymology*, *Syntax*, and *Prosody*.

*Orthography* teaches the nature and powers of letters, and the just method of spelling words.

*Etymology* treats of the different sorts of words, their various modifications, and their derivation.

*Syntax* treats of the agreement, government, and proper arrangement, of words and sentences.

*Prosody* treats of the just pronounciation of words, and the laws of versification.



## ORTHOGRAPHY.

**A** LETTER is the first principle, or least part of a word.

There are twenty-six letters in the English language, called the English Alphabet, namely, *a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, w, x, y, z*; and these are divided into vowels and consonants.

A vowel is a letter which makes a full and distinct sound of itself.

The vowels are *a, e, i, o, u*; and *w* and *y* are considered as vowels, except at the beginning of words.

A consonant is a letter which cannot make a distinct sound, without the help of a vowel. All letters except the vowels are consonants.

Consonants are sometimes divided into *mutes* and *semivowels*.

The mutes cannot be sounded at all without the help of a vowel. They are, *b, p, t, d, h*, and *c* and *g* hard.

The *semivowels* have an imperfect sound of themselves. They are *f, l, m, n, r, v, s, z, x*, and *c* and *g* soft.

Four of the semivowels, namely, *l, m, n, r*, are also distinguished by the name of *liquids*, from their readily uniting with other consonants, and flowing, as it were, into their sounds.

A diphthong is the union of two vowels in one syllable; as, *ou* in *sound*.

A triphthong is the union of three vowels in one syllable; as, *eau*, in *beauty*.

A proper diphthong is that in which both of the vowels are sounded; as *oi* in *voice*.

An improper diphthong has but one of the vowels sounded; as, *ea* in *eagle*.

### SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS.

#### A

*A* has four sounds. First, the long slender English sound, as in *fate*, *paper*, &c. Second, the long Italian sound, as in *far*, *fa-ther*, *pa-pa*, *ma-ma*: Third, the broad German sound, as in *fall*, *wall*, *wa-ter*: Fourth, the short Italian sound, as in *fat*, *mat*, *mar-ry*. The long Italian sound of *a* is often styled the *middle* sound.

There are two cases in which *a* varies from the above description; first, *a* in *cedar* and *liar* sounds like *u* short. Second, *a* in *cabbage*, *fruitage* sounds like *i* short.

*Aa* in proper names, generally, sounds like *a* short; as in *Balaam*, *Canaan*, *Isaac*; but not in *Baal*, *Gaal*.

*Ae* has the sound of long *e*. It is often found in Latin words. Some authors retain this form; as, *ænigma*, *æquator*, *Æsop*, &c.; but others have laid it aside, and write *enigma*, *Cesar*, *Eneas*, &c.

*Ai* has the sound of a long, as in *paid*; of a short, in *raillery*; of *e* short, in *said*, *saith*, *again*, *waistcoat*.

*Ao* has the sound of a long, in *gaol*, pronounced *jale*.

*Au* sounds like a long, in *gauge*; like a middle, in *aunt*, *jaunt*; and like *a* broad, in *laud*, *fraud*, *sauce*, *saucy*. It has the sound of long *o*, in *hautboy*; and that of *o* short, in *laurel*, *laudanum*, &c.

*Aw* has always the sound of broad *a*; as in *bawl*, *scrawl*, *dawn*, *fawn*, *pawn*.

*Ay*, like its near relation *ai*, has the sound of a long; as in *day*, *pray*, *delay*, and of *ez* in *says*.

#### B

*B* has but one unvaried sound, at the beginning, middle, and end of words; as in *baker*, *number*, *rhubarb*. It is silent before *t*, and after *m*, in the same syllable; as, *lamb*, *debt*, *subtle*. In other words, besides being silent, it lengthens the syllable; as in *climb*, *comb*, *tomb*.

#### C

*C* has two sounds; first, *hard*, like *k*, before *a, o, u, l, r, t*; as in *cart*, *cottage*, *curious*, *cloth*, *tract*, *craft*, &c.; second, *soft*, like *s*, before *e, i*, and *y*; as in *centre*, *civil*, *cymbal*, &c. When *c* ends a word, or syllable, it is always hard, as in *music*, *floccid*, *siccit*, pronounced *musik*, *flak-sid*, *sik-sity*. It has sometimes the sound of *sh*; as in *ocean*, *social*.

*C* is silent in some words, as in *Czar*, *virtuals*, *indict*.

*Ch* is commonly sounded like *tsh*; as in *church*, *chin*, *chaff*, *charter*: but in words derived from the Greek, has the sound of *k*; as in *chymist*, *scheme*, *chorus*, *chyle*, *distich*: and in foreign names; as, *Achish*, *Baruch*, *Enoch*, &c. It sounds like *sh*, after *l* or *n*; as, *filch*, *branch*, and in words derived from the French; as in *chaise*, *chagrin*, *chevalier*, *machine*. *Ch* in *arch*, before a vowel, sounds like *k*; as in *archangel*, *Archipelago*, *architect*, *archives*, *archetype*; except in *arched*, *archery*, *archer*, *archenemy*: but before a consonant it always sounds like *tch*; as in *archbishop*, *archduke*, *archpresbyter*, &c. In *choir*, and *chorister*, the *ch* is pronounced like *qu*; in *ostrich*, like *dgde*, as if spelled *ostridge*. *Ch* is silent in *schedule*, *schism*, and *yacht*; pronounced *seddule*, *sizm*, and *yot*.

#### D

*D* has one uniform sound, as in *day*, *red*; unless it may be said to take the sound of *t*, in *stuffed*, *tripped*, &c. pronounced *stuft*, *tript*, &c.

*D*, like *t*, to which it is so near related, when it comes after the accent, and is followed by the diphthongs *ie, io, ia*, or *cou*, slides into *gzh*, or the consonant *j*:\* thus *soldier*, *grandeur*, are pronounced as if written *sol-je*, *gran-jeur*; and *verdure*, (where it must be remembered that *u* is a diphthong,) as if written *ver-jeure*: and for the same reason, *education* is elegantly pronounced *ed-ju-cation*, although the accent comes after the *d*. But *duke* and *reduce*, pronounced *juke* and *re-juce*, where the accent is after the *d*, cannot be too much reprobated.

#### E

*E* has two sounds. First, the long sound, as in *me*, *here*, *me-tre*, *me-dium*: Second, the short sound, as in *met*, *let*, *get*.

*E* has a number of irregular sounds. It sounds like *a* long, in *there*, *where*, *they*, *whew*, and *e'er*; like *a* middle, in *clerk*, *sergeant*, &c.; like *i* short, in *yes*, *England*, *praises*, *faces*, &c.; like *u* short, in *her*, and the unaccented termination *er*, as in *reader*. *E* is always silent at the end of a word, except in monosyllables that have no other vowel; as, *he*, *me*, *she*; or in words derived from the Greek; as, *catastrophe*, *epitome*. It softens the foregoing consonants, and lengthens the preceding vowels; as, *force*, *rage*, *robe*.

*Ea* has the sound of a long, as in *great*, *steak*, *bear*, *pear*, *swear*, *wear*; of *a* middle, in *dearn*, *heart*, *hearth*; of *e* long, as in *eat*, *beat*, *deacon*, *treason*, *plead*, *bohea*; and *e* short, in *head*, *bread*, *cleanly*, &c.

*Eau* has the sound of long *o*; as in *beau*, *flambeau*, *portmanteau*. In *beauty* and its compounds, it has the sound of long *u*.

*Ee* sounds like *e* long, as in *seek*, *sweet*; and like *i* short, in *been*.

*Ei* sounds like *a* long, in *vein*, *reign*, *feign*, *deign*, *reins*, *eight*, *weight*, *heir*, *veil*, *streight*, *freight*, *feint*, *skein*, *neigh*, &c.; like *e* long, in *ceil*, *seize*, *fiend*, *deceit*, *either*, *neither*, *leisure*, *obedience*; like *e* short, in *heifer*; like *i* long, in *height*, *sleight*; like *i* short, in *teint*, *forfeit*, *surfeit*, *sovereignty*, &c.

*Eo* sounds like *e* long, in *people*; like *e* short, in *leopard*, *jeopardy*; and in the

\* This rule is not universal. We are generally agreed in aspirating the *d* in *comedian*, and pronounce it *commejean*: but few, if any, can be found, who aspirate in *trajedian*, and pronounce it as if written *trajejean*.



law terms, *coffee*, *feoffer*, *feoffment*; like *o* long, in *yeoman*; and like *u* short, in *surgeon*, *sturgeon*, *dudgeon*, *gudgeon*, &c.

*Eu* sounds like *u* long, in *feud*, *deuce*, *eulogy*, *pleurisy*. When it follows *r* it sounds like *oo*; as in *rheum*, *rheumatism*.

*Ew* sounds like *u* long, in *few*, *new*, *dew*, &c. pronounced *du*, *nu*; and after *j*, *r*, or *ch*, it sounds like *oo*; as in *Jew*, *crew*, *chew*; like *o* long, in *scw*, *shew*, *strew*, *shewn*, *shewbread*.

*Ey*, when the accent is on it, is always sounded like *a* long; as in *Bey*, *Dey*, *grey*, *prey*, *they*, *trey*, *wey*, *obey*, *convey*, *survey*, *purvey*, &c. except in *key*, *ley*, where it sounds like *e* long. When this diphthong is unaccented, it takes the sound of long *e*; as, *alley*, *valley*, *barley*. *Eye* sounds like *i* long.

## F

*F* has always the same sound; as in *fair*; except in *of*, where it sounds like *v*.

## G

*G*, like *C*, has two sounds, a hard and a soft one; hard, as in *gay*, *go*; soft, like *j*, as in *gentle*, *giant*. It has generally its soft sound before *e*, *i*, and *y*. In other situations, it has, generally, its hard sound, except when preceded by *d*, or followed by *e*. It is silent when it comes before *m*, or *n*; as in *reign*, *gnat*, *foreign*, *assign*, *arraign*, &c.

*Gh*, at the beginning of a word, has the sound of the hard *g*; as, *ghost*, *ghastly*, *aghost*, *gherkin*; in the middle, and, sometimes, at the end, it is quite silent; as, in *right*, *high*, *plough*, *mighty*. At the end, it has often the sound of *f*; as in *laugh*, *cough*, *tough*, *enough*, *rough*; or like *k*, in *hough*, *lough*, *shough*, pronounced *hock*, *lock*, *shock*. Sometimes the *g* only is sounded; as in *burgh*, *burgher*.

*Gn*, at the end of a word, or syllable accented, gives the preceding vowel a long sound; as in *resign*, *impugn*, *oppugn*, *impregn*, *impugned*; pronounced *im-pune*, *imprene*, &c.

## H

*H* does not represent any particular sound, but is a mere effort of the breath, which modifies the sound of the following vowel; as, *horse*, *heave*, *hat*. It is always silent after *r*, and, frequently, when preceded by a vowel; as, *rhetoric*, *rhyme*, *rhapsody*, *myrrh*, *forehead*. *H* final, preceded by a vowel, is always silent; as, *ah*! *hah*! *oh*! *foh*! *Sarah*, *Messiah*. At the beginning of words, it is always sounded, except in *heir*, *heiress*, *honest*, *honesty*, *honour*, *honourable*, *herb*, *herbage*, *hospital*, *hostler*, *hour*, *humble*, *humour*, *humorous*, *humorsome*.

## I

*I* has two sounds. First, the long diphthongal sound; as in *pine*, *title*: Second, the short simple sound; as in *pin*, *tit-ile*. It has a number of irregular sounds. Before *r* it often sounds like *u* short, as in *first*, *stir*, *sir*. In some words it has the sound of *e* long; as in *fatigue*, *caprice*, *tontine*, *machine*, *bombazine*, *magazine*. In a few words, it sounds like short *a*; as in *sirrah*.

*Ia* is frequently sounded like *ya*; as in *Christian*, *filial*, *poniard*; pronounced *Christ-yan*, &c. It has sometimes the sound of short *i*; as in *carriage*, *marriage*, *Parliament*.

*Ie* sounds like *e* long, in *fiend*, *grieve*, *thieve*, *fief*, *liege*, *chief*, *field*, *grenadier*; like *e* short, in *friend*, *tierce*; like *i* long, in *die*, *hie*, *tie*, *pie*, *tie*, *vie*; like *i* short, in *sieve*.

*Ieu* and *iew* have the sound of long *u*; as in *lieu*, *vieu*, *adieu*, *purtieu*. In one word, *lieutenant*, these letters are pronounced like short *e*, as if written *lev-tenant*.

*Io*, when the accent is upon the first vowel, forms two distinct syllables; as, *priory*, *violet*, *violent*. The terminations *tion*, and *sion*, are sounded exactly like the word *shun*, except when the *t* is preceded by *s* or *x*; as in *question*, *digestion*, *combustion*, *mixture*, &c.

*Iou* is sometimes pronounced distinctly in two syllables; as in *bilious*, *carious*, *abstemious*: but these vowels often coalesce into one syllable, pronounced like *shus*; thus, *precious*, *factions*, *noxious*, are sounded as if written *presh-us*, *fac-shus*, *nok-shus*.

## J

*J* sounds exactly like soft *g*; except in *hallelujah*, where it has the sound of *y*. It is never silent.

## K

*K* has exactly the sound of hard *c*, and is used before *c* and *i*, where, according to English analogy, *c* would be soft; as, *kcpt*, *king*, *skirts*. It is silent before *n*, as in *knife*, *know*, *knell*, *knocker*. It is sometimes doubled in proper names; as, *Akkub*, *Bukkiah*, *Habakkuk*, &c.: but *c* is used before it, to shorten the vowel by a double consonant; as, *cockle*, *pickle*, *sucker*.

## L

*L* has always a soft liquid sound; as in *lore*, *billow*, *quarrel*.

Some irregularities attend this letter. It has the power of *r* in *colonel*, and is generally silent before *f*, *k*, *m*, and *v*, when preceded by *a*; as in *half*, *calf*, *be-half*, *talk*, *walk*, *folks*, *psalm*, *salmon*, *almond*, *calve*, *halve*. It is silent in *halser*, *chaldron*, *falcon*, &c. and in the auxiliary verbs *could*, *would*, *should*. The custom is to double the *l* at the end of monosyllables; as, *mill*, *will*, *fall*; except when a diphthong precedes it; as, *hail*, *tail*, *soil*.

*Le*, at the end of words, is pronounced like a weak *el*; in which *e* is almost silent; as, *table*, *shuttle*.

## M

*M* has always the same sound; as, *murmur*, *monumental*; except in *comptrol-ler*, which is pronounced *controller*.

## N

*N* has two sounds; the one simple and pure; as in *man*, *net*, &c. the other

## C

compounded and mixed like *ng*, as in *hang*, *thank*. The latter sound is heard when it is followed by *c* hard, *g*, *k*, *q*, or *x*; as in *concord*, *anger*, *blanket*, *conquer*, *lynx*.

*N* is silent when it ends a syllable, and is preceded by *l* or *m*; as, *kiln*, *hymn*, *linn*, *solemn*, *column*, *autumn*, *condemn*, *contemn*.

## O

*O* has four sounds. First, the long open sound; as in *no*, *note*, *notion*: Second, the long close sound; as in *move*, *prove*, which corresponds to the double *o*: Third, the long broad sound; as in *nor*, *for*, *or*: Fourth, the short broad sound; as in *not*, *hot*, *got*. The long close sound of *o* is often styled the middle sound.

*Oa* sounds like *o* long, in *moat*, *boat*, *coat*, *oat*, &c. and like *a* broad, in *great*, *broad*, *abroad*, &c.

*Oe* sounds like *o* long, in *doe*, *foe*, *roe*, *toe*; like *oo* in *canoe*, *shoe*, &c. like *u* short, in *does*. It has sometimes the sound of long *e*; as in *phantax*, *satus*, *Antaei*: and sometimes of short *e*; as in *economics*, *ecumenical*.

*Oi* has almost universally the double sound of *a* broad and *e* long united; as in *boil*, *spoil*, *toil*, *oil*, *soil*, *joint*, *point*, *anoint*; which should never be pronounced as if written *bile*, *spile*, &c.

*Oo* almost always preserves its regular sound: it is pronounced long; as in *moon*, *soon*, *fool*, *rood*, *food*, *mood*, &c. This is its regular sound. It sounds like *o* long, in *door*, *floor*, pronounced *dore*, *flore*; like *u* middle, in *wool*, *wood*, *good*, *hood*, *foot*, *stood*, *understood*, *withstood*, &c. and like *u* short, in *blood*, *sthood*.

*Ou* has seven different sounds. The first and proper sound is equivalent to *ow* in *down*; as in *bound*, *found*, *surround*, &c. The second is that of short *u*; as in *enough*, *cousin*, *double*, *trouble*, *adjourn*, *journey*, *touchy*, *courage*, *encourage*, *couple*, *scourge*, *flourish*, *nourish*, *southern*, *southward*, *country*, *favour*, *honour*, *famous*, &c. The third is that of *oo*; as in *soup*, *youth*, *bouse*, *bousy*, *surtout*, *croup*, *group*, *uncouth*, *wound*, (a hurt,) *thoroughly*, *you*, *your*, *amour*, *paramour*, *tour*, *tourament*, *rendevous*, *accoutre*, *billetdoux*, &c. The fourth is that of long *o*; as in *though*, *although*, *coulter*, *court*, *poultice*, *soul*, *source*, *resource*, *mourn*, *ourn*, *shoulder*, *borough*, *thorough*, &c. The fifth is like the noun *awe*, and is heard only in *ought*, *bought*, *brought*, *sought*, *besought*, *fought*, *nought*, *thought*, *methought*, *wrought*. The sixth sound is that of short *oo*, or the middle *u*, as heard only in the auxiliary verbs *could*, *would*, *should*, rhyming with *good*, *hood*, *stood*. The seventh sound is that of short *o*, and heard only in *cough*, and *trough*, pronounced *cof*, *trof*; and in *lough*, *shough*, pronounced *lock* and *shock*.

*Ow* is generally sounded like *ou* in *thou*; as in *vow*, *now*, *how*, *cow*, *sow*, *clown*, *frown*, *town*, *crown*, *drown*, *power*, *powder*, *vowel*, *prossess*. It sounds like *o* long, in *grow*, *blow*, *show*, *know*, *snow*, *flown*, *growth*, *low*, *below*, *owner*, *bestower*, &c.

*Oy* is but another form for *oi*, and is pronounced exactly like it.

## P

*P* has but one sound, as in *pen*. It is silent before *s*, and also before *t*, when preceded by *m*, as in *psalter*, *empty*.

*Ph* is generally sounded life *f*; as in *philosophy*, *phantom*, &c. In *nephew* and *Stephen*, it has the sound of *v*. In diphthong, and triphthong, the sound of *p* only is heard; in *phthisis*, *phthisick*, and *phthisical*, both letters are silent. In *sap-phire*, the first *p* slides into *ph*.

## Q

*Q* has always the sound of *k*. It is constantly followed by *u*, pronounced like *w*; and its general sound is heard in *quack*, *quill*, *queen*, &c. pronounced *kwack*, *kwill*, *kween*, &c.

*Qu* is sometimes sounded like *k*; as in *conquer*, *liquor*, pronounced *konkur*, &c.

## R

*R* has two sounds; one rough; as in *Rome*, *rage*; the other smooth; as in *bard*, *card*.

*Re*, at the end of many words, is pronounced like a weak *er*; as in *theatre*, *sepulchre*, *massacre*.

## S

*S* has two different sounds; one, a sharp, hissing sound, at the beginning of words; as, *saint*, *sister*, *sell*, *sun*; the other, a soft and flat sound, like *z*; as in *is*, *his*, *was*, *these*, *those*, *commas*. At the end of words it generally takes the soft sound. It sounds like *z*, before *ion*, if a vowel go before it; as, *intrusion*; but like *s* sharp, if a consonant precede it; as, *conversion*. These two sounds, accompanied by the aspirate, or *h*, form all the varieties which are found in authors upon this letter. *S* is silent in *isle*, *island*, *aisle*, *viscount*, *demesne*.

*Sc* has the power of *sk*, before *a*, *o*, *u*, and *r*; as in *scale*, *scoff*, *sculpture*, *scribble*; like soft *s*, before *e*, *i*, and *y*; as in *scene*, *science*, *Scythian*.

## T

*T* generally sounds, as in *take*, *temper*. *T* before *u*, where the accent precedes, sounds like *tch*, or *tsh*; as in *nature*, *virtue*, pronounced as if written *na-tshure*, or *na-tchure*, *vir-tshue*, or *vir-tchue*. The same may be observed of *t*, when followed by *ou*, or *uou*; as in *righteous*, *piteous*, *plenteous*, *unctuous*, *presumptuous*, &c. pronounced *right-cheous*, *pit-cheous*, *plen-cheous*, *ung-tchuus*, *presump-tchuus*, &c. Nor is this tendency of *t* before long *u* found only where the accent immediately precedes; for we hear the same aspiration in this letter in *spiritual*, *spirituous*, *signature*, *ligature*, *forfeiture*, as if written *spiritshual*, *spiritshuous*, &c. where the accent is two syllables before these letters; and the only termination which seems to refuse this tendency of the *t* to the aspiration, is that in *tude*; as, *latitude*, *longitude*, *multitude*, &c.

*Ti* before a vowel, preceded by *s*, *x*, or *n*, has the sound of *tch*, or *tsh*; as in *bestial*, *celestial*, *frontier*, *admixture*, &c. pronounced *bes-tchial*, *celces-tchial*, *fron-tcheer*, *admix-tchion*; but when not preceded by *s*, *x*, or *n*, it sounds like *sh*; as in *nation*, *patient*, *notion*; except in such words as *hierce*, *tiara*, &c. and excepting also derivatives from words ending in *ty*; as, *mighty*, *nightier*; *I pity*, *thou pitiest*, *he pities*; *twentieth*, *thirtieth*, &c.

*T* is silent when preceded by *s*, and followed by the abbreviated terminations *on* and *le*; as in *hasten*, *chasten*, *fasten*, *listen*, *christen*, *moisten*, *castle*, *nestle*, *wrestle*, *thistle*, *whistle*, *epistle*, *apostle*, *bustle*, &c. which are pronounced as if written *haec'n*, *chace'n*, *cassle*, *nestle*, &c. In *often* and *soften*, the *t* is silent; also, in *mortgage*, *bankruptcy*.

*Th* has two sounds, one soft and flat; as, *thus*, *whether*, *hither*, *thither*, &c. the other sharp; as in *breath*, *thick*, *throne*, *panther*, *ethics*, *Thursday*. *Th* is, sometimes, pronounced like simple *t*; as, *Thomas*, *thyme*, *Thames*, *asthma*, &c.

## U

*U* has three sounds. First, the long diphthongal sound; as in *tube*, *cube*, *cubic*: Second, the short simple sound; as in *tub*, *cup*, *sup*: Third, the middle or obtuse sound; as in *bull*, *full*, *pull*: In this sound we do not pronounce the latter part of *u* quite so long as the *oo* in *pool*, nor so short as the *u* in *dull*; but with a middle sound between both, which is the true short sound of the *oo* in *coo* and *woo*, as may be heard by comparing *woo* and *wool*; the latter of which is a perfect rhyme to *bull*.

*U* has some irregular sounds. When *u* accented follows *r*, or *ch*, in the same syllable, it, sometimes, has the long sound of *oo*; as in *true*, *rule*. It has the sound of *e* short, in *bury*, and *burial*; pronounced *berry*, *berrial*; and of *i* short, in *business*; pronounced *bizzness*.

*Ua* sounds like *wa*, in *assuage*, *persuade*, *antiquary*; like middle *a*, in *guard*, *guardian*, *guarantee*.

*Uc* sounds like *u* long, in *chue*, *cue*, *due*, *blue*, *hue*, *flue*, *pursue*, &c. like *we* in *quench*, *querist*, *conquest*, &c. In a few words it is pronounced like *e* short; as in *guest*, *guess*. In some words it is entirely sunk; as in *antique*, *oblique*, *prorogue*, *catalogue*, *dialogue*, &c.

*Ui* sounds like *u* long, in *suit*, *swice*, *juice*, *pursuit*, &c. When *ui* follows *b* or *g*, the *u* is silent, and the *g* has its hard sound; as in *guide*, *guile*, *guild*, *build*, *guilt*, *disguise*, *beguile*, *guinea*, &c. It sounds like *wi*, in *languid*, *anguish*, *quickly*, *extinguish*, &c. like *oo*, in *fruit*, *bruise*, *recruit*, &c.

*Uo* sounds like *wo*; as in *quote*, *quorum*, *quondam*, &c.

*Uy* has the sound of long *e*; as in *obloquy*, *soliloquy*; pronounced *obloquee*, &c.; except *buy*, and its derivatives.

*Uai* has the sound of *wa*; as in *quail*, *quaint*, *acquaintance*.

*Uea* and *uee* sound like *wee*; as in *squeak*, *squeal*, *squeamish*, *squeeze*, *queer*, &c. *Uoi* and *uoy* sound like *woi*; as in *quoif*, *quofure*, *quoil*, *quoin*, and *buoy*.

## V

*V* has the sound of flat *f*; and bears the same relation to it as *z* does to *s*. It has one uniform sound, as in *voice*, *vanity*, *love*; and if ever silent, it is in the word *twelvemonth*, where both that letter and the *e*, are, in colloquial pronunciation, generally dropped, as if written *tuel'month*.

## W

*W*, when a consonant, has nearly the sound of *oo*; as, *water*, resembles *oater*. *W* before *h* is pronounced as if it were after the *h*; as in *why*, *when*; pronounced *hwy*, *hwen*.

*W* before *r* is always silent; as in *wrack*, *wrangle*, *wrap*, *wrath*, &c. and before *h* and the vowel *o*, when long, as *whole*, *who*, &c. pronounced *hole*, *hoo*, &c. In *sword*, and *answer*, it is always silent: also in the preposition *toward*, and *towards*, pronounced as if written *toard* and *toards*, rhyming with *hoard* and *hoards*; but in the adjectives and adverbs, *toward* and *towards*, *froward* and *frowardly*, the *w* is heard distinctly. It is sometimes dropped in the last syllable of *awkward*, as if written *awkuard*; but this pronunciation is vulgar. *W* is, often, joined to *o* at the end of a syllable, without affecting the sound of that vowel; as, *crow*, *blow*, *grow*, *know*, *row*, *tow*, &c.

## X

*X* has three sounds, viz. It is sounded like *z* at the beginning of proper names of Greek origin; as in *Xanthus*, *Xenophon*, *Xerxes*.

It has a sharp sound like *ks*, when it ends a syllable with the accent upon it; as, *exit*, *exercise*, *excellence*; or when the accent is on the next syllable, if it begin with a consonant; as, *excuse*, *extent*, *expense*.

It has, generally, a flat sound like *gz*, when the accent is not on it, and the following syllable begins with a vowel; as, *exert*, *exist*, *example*; pronounced, *egzert*, *egzist*, *egzample*.

## Y

*Y*, when a consonant, has always the same sound; as in *young*; but, as a vowel, it has different sounds. When it follows a consonant, and ends a word or syllable, it sounds like *i* long, as in *defy*, *tyrant*, *reply*, &c. but when the accent does not fall on it, then it is sounded like *e* long, as *folly*, *vanity*.

## Z

*Z* sounds like the flat *s*; as in *freeze*, *frozen*, *brazen*.

## OF SYLLABLES, AND THE RULES FOR ARRANGING THEM.

A SYLLABLE is a sound, either simple or compounded, pronounced by a single impulse of the voice, and constituting a word, or part of a word; as, *a*, *an*, *ant*. Spelling is the art of rightly dividing words into their syllables, or of expressing a word by its proper letters.

The following are the general rules for the division of words into syllables.

1. A single consonant between two vowels, must be joined to the latter syllable; as, *de-light*, *bri-dal*, *re-source*: except the letter *x*; as, *ex-ist*, *ex-amine*; and except likewise words compounded; as, *up-on*, *un-even*, *dis-ease*.

2. Two consonants proper to begin a word, must not be separated; as, *fa-ble*, *sti-ple*. But when they come between two vowels, and are such as cannot begin a word, they must be divided; as, *ut-most*, *un-der*, *in-sect*, *er-ror*, *cof-fin*.

3. When three consonants meet in the middle of a word, if they can begin a word, and the preceding vowel be pronounced long, they are not to be separated; as, *de-throne*, *de-stroy*. But when the vowel of the preceding syllable is pronounced short, one of the consonants always belongs to that syllable; as, *dis-tract*, *dis-prove*, *dis-train*.

4. When three or four consonants, which are not proper to begin a syllable, meet between two vowels, such of them as can begin a syllable belong to the latter, the rest to the former syllable; as, *ab-stain*, *com-plete*, *em-broil*, *dan-dler*, *dap-ple*, *con-strain*, *hand-some*, *parch-ment*.

5. Two vowels, not being a diphthong, must be divided into separate syllables; as, *cru-el*, *de-ni-al*, *so-ci-e-ty*.

6. Compounded words must be traced into the simple words of which they are composed; as, *ice-house*, *glow-worm*, *over-power*, *never-the-less*.

7. Grammatical, and other particular terminations, are generally separated; as, *teach-est*, *teach-eth*, *teach-ing*, *teach-er*, *contend-est*, *great-er*, *wretch-ed*, *good-ness*, *free-dom*, *false-hood*.

## OF WORDS IN GENERAL, AND THE RULES FOR SPELLING THEM.

WORDS are articulate sounds, used by common consent, as signs of our ideas.

A word of one syllable is termed a Monosyllable; a word of two syllables, a Dissyllable; a word of three syllables, a Trisyllable; and a word of four or more syllables, a Polysyllable.

All words are either primitive or derivative.

A primitive word is that which cannot be reduced to any simpler word in the language; as, *man*, *good*, *content*.

A derivative word is that which may be reduced to another word in English of greater simplicity; as, *manful*, *goodness*, *contentment*, *Yorkshire*.\*

The orthography of the English Language is attended with much uncertainty and perplexity. But a considerable part of this inconvenience may be remedied, by attending to the general laws of formation; and, for this end, the learner is presented with a view of such general maxims in spelling primitive and derivative words, as have been almost universally received.

RULE I.—Monosyllables ending with *f*, *l*, or *s*, preceded by a single vowel, double the final consonant; as, *staff*, *mill*, *pass*, &c. The only exceptions are, *of*, *if*, *as*, *is*, *has*, *was*, *yes*, *his*, *this*, *us*, and *thus*.

RULE II.—Monosyllables ending with any consonant but *f*, *l*, or *s*, and preceded by a single vowel, never double the final consonant; excepting *add*, *ebb*, *butt*, *egg*, *odd*, *err*, *inn*, *bunn*, *purr*, and *buzz*.

RULE III.—Words ending with *y*, preceded by a consonant, form the plurals of nouns, the persons of verbs, verbal nouns, past participles, comparatives, and superlatives, by changing *y* into *i*; as, *spy*, *spies*; *I carry*, *thou carriest*; *he carrieth*, *or carries*; *carrier*, *carried*; *happy*, *happier*, *happiest*.

The present participle in *ing*, retains the *y*, that *i* may not be doubled; as, *carry*, *carrying*; *bury*, *burying*, &c.

But *y*, preceded by a vowel, in such instances as the above, is not changed; as, *boy*, *boys*; *I cloy*, *he cloy*, *cloyed*, &c.; except in *lay*, *pay*, and *say*; from which are formed, *laid*, *paid*, and *said*; and their compounds, *unlaid*, *unpaid*, *unsaid*, &c.

RULE IV.—Words ending with *y*, preceded by a consonant, upon assuming an additional syllable beginning with a consonant, commonly change *y* into *i*; as, *happy*, *happily*, *happiness*. But when *y* is preceded by a vowel, it is very rarely changed in the additional syllable; as, *coy*, *coyly*; *boy*, *boyish*, *boyhood*; *annoy*, *annoyance*; *joy*, *joyless*, *joyful*.

RULE V.—Monosyllables, and words accented on the last syllable, ending with a single consonant preceded by a single vowel, double that consonant, when they take another syllable beginning with a vowel; as, *wit*, *witty*; *thin*, *thinnish*; *to abet*, *an abetter*; *to begin*, *a beginner*.

But if a diphthong precedes, or the accent is on the preceding syllable, the consonant remains single; as, *to toil*, *toiling*; *to offer*, *an offering*; *maid*, *maiden*, &c.

RULE VI.—Words ending with any double letter but *l*, and taking *ness*, *less*, *ly*, or *ful*, after them, preserve the letter double; as, *harmlessness*, *carelessness*, *carelessly*, *stiffly*, *successful*, *distressful*, &c. But those words which end with double *l*, and take *ness*, *less*, *ly*, or *ful*, after them, generally omit one *l*; as, *fulness*, *skilfulness*, *fully*, *skilful*, &c.

RULE VII.—*Ness*, *less*, *ly*, and *ful*, added to words ending with silent *e*, do not cut it off; as, *paleness*, *guileless*, *closely*, *peaceful*; except in a few words; as, *duly*, *truly*, *awful*.

RULE VIII.—*Ment*, added to words ending with silent *e*, generally preserves the *e* from elision; as, *abatement*, *chastisement*, *incitement*, &c. The words *judgment*, *abridgment*, *acknowledgment*, are deviations from the rule.

Like other terminations, *ment* changes *y* into *i*, when preceded by a consonant; as, *accompany*, *accompaniment*; *merry*, *merriment*.

RULE IX.—*Able* and *ible*, when incorporated into words ending with silent *e*, almost always cut it off; as, *blame*, *blamable*; *cure*, *curable*; *sense*, *sensible*, &c.: but if *c* or *g* soft comes before *e* in the original word, the *e* is then preserved in words compounded with *able*; as, *change*, *changeable*; *peace*, *peaceable*, &c.

RULE X.—When *ing* or *ish* is added to words ending with silent *e*, the *e* is almost universally omitted; as, *place*, *placing*; *lodge*, *lodging*; *slave*, *slavish*; *prude*, *prudish*.

RULE XI.—Words taken into composition, often drop those letters which were superfluous in the simple words; as, *handful*, *dunghil*, *withal*, *also*, *chilblain*, &c.

\* A compound word is included under the head of derivative words; as, *penknife*, *teacup*, *looking-glass*; may be reduced to other words of greater simplicity.

# ETYMOLOGY.

There are, in English, ten sorts of words, or, as they are commonly called, parts of speech, namely, the *Article, Noun, Pronoun, Adjective, Verb, Participle, Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, and Interjection.*

## OF ARTICLES.

An **ARTICLE** is a word placed before nouns to limit their signification; as, *a garden, an eagle, the woman.*

There are two articles, *a* or *an*, and *the*. *A* or *an* is called the indefinite article. *The* is called the definite article.

The *indefinite article* limits the noun to one of a kind, but, generally, to no particular one; as, "Give me *a* book;" that is, any book; "Bring me *an* apple;" that is, any apple. It can be prefixed to nouns in the singular number only.

The *definite article* limits the noun to one or more particular objects; as, "Give me *the* book;" "Bring me *the* apple;" meaning some particular book, or apple referred to. It is prefixed to nouns, both in the singular and plural.

There is a seeming exception to the rule respecting the *indefinite article*; for *a* is used before plural nouns preceded by *few* or *many*; as, "*A few days; a great many years.*" It is also used before plural nouns preceded by *dozen, hundred, thousand, &c.*; as, "*A dozen men; a hundred years.*" but in reality this is not an exception, because the adjective, in such cases, indicates *one whole number* considered in a collective view: *a few men*, means, *a small number of men.*

The *indefinite article* often includes the meaning of *every* and *each*; as, "He inherits an estate of three thousand pounds a year." "They were paid at the rate of twenty pounds *a* man."

*A* is used before words beginning with a consonant, or long *u*; as, *a man, a unicorn*: *An* is used before words beginning with a vowel or silent *h*; as, *an acorn, an hour.*

The *definite article* is, sometimes, used before adverbs of the comparative or superlative degree, in order to mark the degree more strongly, or to define it more precisely; as, "*The more I read the book, the better I like it.*"

The article is generally omitted before nouns that imply the different virtues, vices, passions, qualities, sciences, arts, metals, herbs, &c.; as, "*Prudence is commendable; falsehood is odious; anger ought to be avoided.*" It is not prefixed to a proper name; as, *Alexander, Cesar*, (because that of itself denotes a determinate individual or particular thing,) except for the sake of distinguishing a particular family; as, "*He is a Howard, or of the family of the Howards;*" or by way of eminence; as, "*Every man is not a Newton;*" "He has the courage of an Achilles;" or when some noun is understood; as, "*He sailed down the (river) Thames, in the (ship) Britannia.*"

When nouns are taken in their most extensive signification, they do not admit articles before them; as, "*Dogs are faithful.*" "*Horses are useful.*" "*Man is the most noble creature in this lower world.*"

Articles are words of great use in speech. Their force consists in pointing or singling out from the common mass, the individual, or individuals, of which we mean to speak.

*A* or *an* is more general and unlimited, and is nearly synonymous with *one*. *The* is more definite and special, and is nearly synonymous with *this* or *that*.

The peculiar use and importance of the articles, will be seen in the following examples; "*The son of a king—the son of the king—a son of the king.*" Each of these three phrases has an entirely different meaning, through the different application of the two little words *a* and *the*. "*Thou art a man,*" is a very harmless position; but, "*Thou art the man,*" (as Nathan said to David,) is an assertion capable of striking terror and remorse into the heart.

It must be recollected that *a* and *an* are in reality the same word, the *n* being added merely for the sake of sound; thus, it would be very disagreeable to say, "*a elephant, a inch, a hour,*" and the like.

Articles are so called from the Latin word *articulus*, which signifies, *a joint or small part.*

## OF NOUNS.

A **NOUN** is a word which is the name of any person, place, or thing; as, *Man, London, book, virtue.*

Nouns are of two kinds, common and proper.

Common nouns are the names of whole sorts or species; as, *Man, lion, horse, tree, city, river.*

Proper nouns are the names of individuals; as, *George, Eliza, Boston, New-York, Thames, Potomac.*

When proper nouns have an article annexed to them, they are used as common nouns; as, "He is the *Cicero* of his age;" "He is reading the lives of the twelve *Cesars.*" Common nouns become proper, when applied to the Deity; as, *King, Father, Lord.* To nouns belong gender, person, number, and case.

### GENDER.

**GENDER** is the distinction of sex. There are three genders, the Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.

The *masculine gender* denotes males; as, *Man, horse, bull.*

The *feminine gender* denotes females; as, *Woman, duck, hen.*

The *neuter gender* denotes things without sex; as, *Pen, house, tree.*

Some nouns, naturally neuter, are, by a figure of speech, converted into the masculine or feminine gender; as when we say of the sun, *he* is setting; and of a ship, *she* sails well.

Figuratively, in the English tongue, we commonly give the masculine gender to nouns which are conspicuous for the attributes of imparting, or communicating, and which are by nature strong and efficacious. Those, again, are made feminine, which are conspicuous for the attributes of containing or bringing forth, or which are peculiarly beautiful or amiable. Upon these principles, the sun is said to be masculine; and the moon, being the receptacle of the sun's light, to be feminine. A ship, a country, a city, &c. are likewise made feminine, being receivers or containers. Time is always masculine, on account of its mighty efficacy. Virtue is feminine from its beauty, and its being the object of love. Fortune and the Church are generally put in the feminine gender.

On this fiction, called personification, depends much of the descriptive force and beauty of poetry.

Nouns that denote creatures whose sex is not known, or has not been determined by the custom of language, may be esteemed neuter; as, *bird, fish, mole, fly, &c.*

The English language has three methods of distinguishing the sex, viz.

### 1. By different words; as,

Male.	Female.	Male.	Female.
Bachelor.	Maid.	Husband.	Wife.
Boar.	Sow.	King.	Queen.
Boy.	Girl.	Lad.	Lass.
Brother.	Sister.	Lord.	Lady.
Buck.	Doe.	Man.	Woman.
Bull.	Cow.	Master.	Mistress.
Bullock or } Steer. }	Heifer.	Milker.	Spawner.
Cock.	Hen.	Nephew.	Niece.
Dog.	Bitch.	Ram.	Ewe.
Drake.	Duck.	Singer.	{ Songstress or Singer.
Earl.	Countess.	Sloven.	Slut.
Father.	Mother.	Son.	Daughter.
Friar.	Nun.	Stag.	Hind.
Gander.	Goose.	Uncle.	Aunt.
Hart.	Roe.	Wizard.	Witch.
Horse.	Mare.		

### 2. By a difference of termination; as,

Male.	Female.	Male.	Female.
Abbot.	Abbess.	Landgrave.	Landgravine.
Actor.	Actress.	Lion.	Lioness.
Administrator.	Administratrix.	Marquis.	Marchioness.
Adulterer.	Adulteress.	Master.	Mistress.
Ambassador.	Ambadress.	Mayor.	Mayoress.
Arbiter.	Arbitress.	Patron.	Patroness.
Baron.	Baroness.	Peer.	Peeress.
Bridegroom.	Bride.	Poet.	Poetess.
Benefactor.	Benefactress.	Priest.	Priestess.
Caterer.	Cateress.	Prince.	Princess.
Chanter.	Chantress.	Prior.	Prioress.
Conductor.	Conductress.	Prophet.	Prophetess.
Count.	Countess.	Protector.	Protectress.
Deacon.	Deaconess.	Shepherd.	Shepherdess.
Duke.	Dutchess.	Songster.	Songstress.
Electer.	Electress.	Sorcerer.	Sorceress.
Emperor.	Empress.	Sultan.	{ Sultaness or Sultana.
Enchanter.	Enchantress.	Tiger.	Tigress.
Executer.	Executrix.	Traitor.	Traitress.
Governor.	Governess.	Tutor.	Tutress.
Heir.	Heiress.	Viscount.	Viscountess.
Hero.	Heroine.	Votary.	Votress.
Hunter.	Huntress.	Widower.	Widow.
Host.	Hostess.		
Jew.	Jewess.		

### 3. By prefixing some word indicating sex; as,

A cock-sparrow.	A hen-sparrow.
A man-servant.	A maid-servant.
A he-goat.	A she-goat.
A he-bear.	A she-bear.
A male child.	A female child.
Male descendants.	Female descendants.

It sometimes happens, that the same noun is either masculine or feminine. The words *parent, child, cousin, friend, neighbour, servant*, and several others, are used indifferently for males or females.



Nouns with variable terminations contribute to conciseness and perspicuity of expression. We have only a sufficient number of them to make us feel our want: for when we say of a woman, she is a philosopher, an astronomer, a builder, a weaver; we perceive an impropriety in the termination, which we cannot avoid: but we can say, she is a botanist, a student, a witness, a scholar, an orphan, a companion, because these terminations have not annexed to them the notion of sex.

## PERSON.

PERSON is the quality of the noun which modifies the verb. There are three persons, the first, second, and third.

The *first person* denotes the person speaking.

The *second person* denotes the person or thing spoken to.

The *third person* denotes the person or thing spoken of. Nouns have but two persons, the second, and third; \* as, Second person—"John, bring me that book." Third person—"John is a good scholar."

## NUMBER.

NUMBER is the distinction of one from many. Nouns have two numbers, the singular and plural.

The *singular number* denotes but one object; as, *book, chair, table.*

The *plural number* denotes more objects than one; as, *books, chairs, tables.*

The plural number is generally formed by adding *s* to the singular; as, *sea, seas; hand, hands; pen, pens; grape, grapes; vale, vales; vow, vows.* When the letter *s* does not combine in sound with the word, or last syllable of it, the addition of *s* increases the number of syllables; as, *house, houses; grace, graces; page, pages; rose, roses; voice, voices; maze, mazes.* When the noun ends in *x*, *ss*, *sh*, or soft *ch*, the plural is formed by adding *es* to the singular; for a single *s* after those letters cannot be pronounced; as, *fox, foxes; glass, glasses; brush, brushes; church, churches*: but when the nouns end in *ch* hard, like *k*, the plural is formed by *s* only; as, *monarch, monarchs.* Nouns which end in *o*, have sometimes *es* added to form the plural; as, *cargo, cargoes; echo, echoes; hero, heroes; negro, negroes; manifesto, manifestoes; potato, potatoes; volcano, volcanoes; wo, voes*; and sometimes only *s*; as, *folio, folios; punctilio, punctilios; seraglio, seraglios.* When a noun ends with *y* preceded by a consonant, the plural is formed by dropping *y* and adding *ies*; as, *vanity, vanities; body, bodies; assembly, assemblies*; but when preceded by a vowel, *a, e, or o*; *s* only is added; as, *valley, valleys; chimney, chimneys; money, moneys; joy, joys; key, keys; delay, delays; attorney, attorneys.*

NOTE 1.—We sometimes see *valley, chimney, money, journey, attorney*, and a few others of the like terminations, written in the plural with *ies*—*vallies, chimnies, attornies*; but this irregularity is not to be vindicated; the plural of key may be written *keys* with equal propriety.

NOTE 2.—A few English nouns deviate from the foregoing rules in the formation of the plural number.

CLASS 1. Many nouns ending in *f*, or *fe*, form their plural by changing the termination into *ves*; as, *life, lives; knife, knives; wife, wives; leaf, leaves; calf, calves; self, selves; half, halves; beef, beeves; staff, staves; loaf, loaves; sheaf, sheaves; shelf, shelves; wolf, wolves; wharf, wharves; thief, thieves.* Some nouns of the like endings form their plural by the addition of *s*; as, *grief, griefs; relief, reliefs; reproof, reproofs*; and a few others. Those which end in *ff* have the regular plural; as, *ruff, ruffs*; except in *staff, staves.*

CLASS 2. The second class consists of words which are irregular in the formation of their plural; as, *man, men; woman, women; child, children; foot, feet; tooth, teeth; ox, oxen; goose, geese; beau, beaux; brother, brothers or brethren; penny, pennies or pence; die, dies or dice; pea, peas or pease; index, indexes or indices; basis, bases; emphasis, emphases; hypothesis, hypotheses; parenthesis, parentheses; ellipsis, ellipses; seraph, seraphim; cherub, cherubim; radius, radii; phenomenon, phenomena; genius, geniæ or geniuses; axis, axes; criterion, criterions or criteria; medium, mediums or media; memorandum, memorandums or memoranda; encomium, encomiums or encomia.*

CLASS 3. The third class of irregulars consists of such as have no plural termination; some of which do not admit of plurality; as, *rye, barley, flax, hemp, flour, sloth, pride, pitch*; and the names of metals; as, *gold, silver, tin, lead, quicksilver, &c.* Other words in this class are alike in both numbers; as, *cattle, sheep, swine, deer, trout, salmon*, and many other names of fish.

CLASS 4. The fourth class of irregular nouns consists of words which have the plural termination only. Some of these denoting plurality, are always joined with verbs in the plural; as the following; *annals, archives, ashes, betters, bowels, compasses, clothes, breeches, drawers, dregs, embers, entrails, fetters, filings, goods, hatches, ices, lees, lungs, nippers, pinners or pinchers, snuffers, shears, scissors, shambles, tidings, tongs, thanks, vitals, victuals, &c.* Other words of this class, though ending in *s*, are used either wholly in the singular number, or in the one or the other, at the pleasure of the writer; as, *alms, bellows, gallows,*

\* The person, who speaks, is always represented by a pronoun, and not by a noun; and, therefore, we have no form of the verb, of the first person, to agree with a noun. Peter may say, "I am the man;" but he cannot say, with propriety, "Peter am the man." He may speak of himself, and say, "Peter is the man." When nouns are put in apposition with pronouns, of the first person, they have the appearance of being in the first person also; but even in this case, the noun is in the third person, and the verb agrees, in person, with the pronoun; as, "Tell your general, that I, Napoleon Bonaparte, am here." That the noun, in this sentence, is actually in the third person, may be seen by making use of a relative, referring to the pronoun, or noun, for its antecedent; and which, according to rule, may agree in person with either. If we make it agree with the pronoun, it must be of the first person, and must have a verb of the first person; as, "I, Napoleon Bonaparte, who command the French army, am here." But if the relative agree with the noun, it must be of the third person, and must have a verb of the third person; as, "I, Napoleon Bonaparte, who commands the French army, am here." A noun is never used in the second person, except when an address is made; in which case, it is always in the nominative case independent.

† *Indices*, when it signifies pointers, or tables of contents; *Indices*, when referring to algebraic quantities.

‡ *Geniæ*, when denoting aerial spirits; *geniuses*, when signifying persons of genius.

*odds, means, pains, news, riches, wages, billiards, sessions, measles, hysterics, physics, acoustics, pneumatics, tactics, mathematics, mechanics, politics.* Of these, *pains, riches, and wages*, are more usually considered as plural—*news* is always singular—*odds* and *means* are either singular or plural—the others are more strictly singular.

## CASE.

CASE is the different state or situation of nouns with regard to other words. Nouns have three cases, the nominative, possessive, and objective.

The *nominative case* is the actor, or subject of the verb; as, "The boys play;" "The girls learn." It generally comes before the verb.

The *possessive case* denotes property or possession. It is generally formed by adding *s* to a noun with an apostrophe; thus, "John's book." When the plural ends in *s*, the apostrophe only is added; as, "On eagles' wings." And when the singular number ends in *es* or *ss*, the additional *s* is generally omitted; as, "Achilles' shield;" "For goodness' sake." When the letter *s*, added as the sign of the possessive, will coalesce with the name, it is pronounced in the same syllable; as, "Peter's cane." But if it will not coalesce, it adds a syllable to the word; as, "Thomas's bravery," pronounced as if written *Thomasis*—"The Church's prosperity," *Churchis* prosperity.

The *objective case* is the object on which the action of a verb or participle terminates, or the object of a preposition; as, "Alexander conquered the Persians;" "They live in London." In the first sentence, the action of conquering terminates on the object, *Persians*.

The nominative and objective cases, of nouns, have always the same form, and are distinguished only by their different offices. The possessive case is always known by its ending.

Nouns are declined in the following manner.

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Nom. King	Nom. Kings	Nom. Man	Nom. Men
Pos. King's	Pos. Kings'	Pos. Man's	Pos. Men's
Obj. King.	Obj. Kings.	Obj. Man.	Obj. Men.

Nouns are so called from the Latin word *nomen*, which signifies a name.

## OF PRONOUNS.

A PRONOUN is a word used instead of a noun, to avoid the too frequent repetition of the same word; as, "The man is happy; he is benevolent; he is useful."

There are two kinds of pronouns, personal and relative.

*Personal pronouns* stand immediately for the name of some person or thing; as, "I write; they play."

*Relative pronouns* relate, in general, to some preceding noun, or sentence, called the antecedent; as "The general, who commands the army, is an accomplished officer." In this sentence, *general* is the antecedent, and *who* is the relative. The same that belong to nouns, belong also to pronouns. They have three persons: Gender has respect only to the third person singular of the pronouns, *he, she, it*.

There are five personal pronouns, with their variations to express number and case; viz. *I*, the person who speaks; *thou*, the person to whom a speech is directed; and *he, she, or it*, the person or thing spoken of.

This account of persons will be very intelligible, when we reflect, that there are three persons who may be the subject of a discourse: first, the person who speaks, may speak of himself; secondly, he may speak of the person to whom he addresses himself; thirdly, he may speak of some other person; and as the speakers, the persons spoken to, and the other persons spoken of, may be many, so each of these persons must have the plural number.

The objective case of pronouns has, in general, a form different from that of the nominative or possessive case.

The personal pronouns are thus declined.

FIRST PERSON.			
Singular.		Plural.	
Nom. I,		Nom. We,	
Pos. my or mine,		Pos. our or ours,	
Obj. me.		Obj. us.	
SECOND PERSON.			
Singular.		Plural.	
Nom. thou,		Nom. ye or you,	
Pos. thy or thine,		Pos. your or yours,	
Obj. thee.		Obj. you.	
THIRD PERSON.			
-Singular.		Plural.	
Nom. he,		Nom. they,	
Pos. his,		Pos. their or theirs,	
Obj. him.		Obj. them.	
Singular.		Plural.	
Nom. she,		Nom. they,	
Pos. her or hers,		Pos. their or theirs,	
Obj. her.		Obj. them.	
Singular.		Plural.	
Nom. it,		Nom. they,	
Pos. its,		Pos. their or theirs,	
Obj. it.		Obj. them.	

Where there are two forms of the possessive case, as *thy* or *thine*, the former is used with a noun; the latter when the noun is understood but not expressed.

*Thou* is here given as the second person singular; but common custom has set aside the rules of grammar in this case, and we generally make use of *you* instead of *thou*. Thus, instead of saying, *thou wast*; we say, *you were*. In short, it may be remarked, once for all, that *thou* and *ye* are the second person, used in sacred or solemn style; and that *you* is the second person, used in common or familiar style, instead of either of them.

The noun *self* is frequently joined with the personal pronouns; as, *himself*, *herself*, *itself*, *myself*, *yourself*; and expresses emphasis or apposition, or forms what some call a reciprocal pronoun: but such compound pronouns are still properly termed personal pronouns. They are indifferently used in the nominative or objective. *Self*, in modern style, is never added to *his*, *their*, *mine*, or *thine*; but *himself*, *themselves*, are now used in the nominative case, instead of *himself*, *themselves*; as, "He came himself;" "He himself shall do this;" "They performed it themselves."

To mark possession in a more emphatical manner, we often join the adjective *own* to pronouns in the possessive case; as, "He bought the farm with *his own* money."

The pronoun *it* sometimes stands for a sentence or part of a sentence; as, "The Jews, *it* is well known, were at this time under the dominion of the Romans." Here *it* represents the whole of the sentence, except the clause in which it stands. To understand this, let the order of the words be varied. "The Jews were at this time under the dominion of the Romans, *it* [all that] is well known."

"As for the pulling of them down, if the affairs require *it*." Require what? "The pulling of them down,"—for which part of the sentence *it* is a substitute.

"Shall worldly glory, impotent and vain,  
That fluctuates like the billows of the main;  
Shall this with more respect thy bosom move,  
Than zeal for crowns that never fade above?  
Avert *it* Heav'n."

Avert what? all that is expressed in the four preceding lines, for which *it* is a substitute.

*It*, is a term of the greatest universality, and may be applied to any being or thing in the universe. Of the Divine Being we say, *it* is the Lord who hath done this. Of an infant we say, *it* cries. We also say, *it* was you. Who is *it*? Was *it* the lady? Was *it* they? What stone is this? *It* is marble.

*It*, often represents the condition of persons and things; as, How is *it* with you? *It* is hot; that is, the weather, or a state of things called weather.

The relative pronouns are *who*, *whose*, *whom*, *which*, *what*, and *that*. All pronouns, except the relative, are personal.

*Who*, *whose*, and *whom*, are applied to persons, and *which*, to things or brutes; as, "He is a friend, *who* is faithful in adversity." "This is the tree, *which* produces no fruit." "The bird, *which* sung so sweetly, is flown."

*That*, is applied to both persons and things; as, "He *that* acts wisely, deserves praise." "Modesty is a quality that highly adorns a woman."

*What*, is a kind of compound relative, including both the antecedent and the relative, and is mostly equivalent to *that which*; as, "I have heard *what* has been alleged;" that is to say, "I have heard *that which* has been alleged." or, "the thing *which*," &c.

*Who* is of both numbers, and is thus declined:

Singular and Plural.	
Nominative,	Who,
Possessive,	Whose,
Objective,	Whom.

*Which*, *what*, and *that*, are likewise of both numbers, and are used in the nominative and objective case, but have no possessive; except that *whose* is sometimes used as the possessive case of *which*; as, "Is there any other doctrine *whose* followers are unpunished?"

"And the fruit  
Of that forbidden tree, *whose* mortal taste  
Brought death."

MILTON.

"Pure the joy without alloy,  
*Whose* very rapture is tranquillity."

YOUNG.

"The lights and shades, *whose* well accorded strife,  
Gives all the strength and colour of the life."

POPE.

"This is one of the clearest characteristics of its being a religion *whose* origin is divine."

BLAIR.

By the use of this license, one word is substituted for three; as, "Philosophy, *whose* end is to instruct us in the knowledge of nature;" for "Philosophy, the end of *which* is to instruct us."

*Who*, *which*, and *what*, have, sometimes, the words *ever* and *soever* annexed to them; as, *whoever* or *whosoever*, *whichever* or *whichsoever*, *whatever* or *whatsoever*: but they are seldom used in modern style.

*Who*, when used in this manner, is thus declined:

Singular and Plural.		
Nom. whoever,	Pos. whosoever,	Obj. whomever.
Nom. whosoever,	Pos. whosoever,	Obj. whomsoever.

The word *that* is a relative pronoun when it may be changed into *who* or *which*, without destroying the sense; an adjective, when it belongs to a noun expressed or understood, and in all other places it is a conjunction.

*Who*, *which*, and *what*, when used in asking questions, are sometimes ranged under a separate head, and called interrogative pronouns. But I have deemed this unnecessary. The only difference is, that *without* an interrogation, the relatives have reference to a subject which is antecedent, definite, and known; with an interrogation, to a subject which is subsequent, indefinite, and unknown, and which it is expected that the answer should express and ascertain.

*Which*, sometimes refers to a sentence or part of a sentence for its antecedent; as, "We are required to fear God and keep his commandments, *which* is the whole duty of man." What is the whole duty of man? "To fear God and keep his commandments."

The personal pronouns are often used as antecedents; as, "I, *that* speak in righteousness, am mighty to save." "He, *who* obeys not the laws, is a bad man." "She, *who* plays on the spinet, is a beautiful young lady." In these sentences, *I*, *He*, *She*, are antecedents.

*Which* and *what*, are sometimes used as adjectives; as "Which book will you take?" "In *what* character shall you appear?"

The word *as* is sometimes used as a relative pronoun, and is equivalent to *which*, or *that*; as, "The same arguments are applicable, *as* were applied to the theory of uniformity of perceptions." Here *as* is precisely synonymous with *which*: it refers to arguments, and is the nominative to, were applied.

"On his return to Egypt, he loved a mighty army, *as* I learned from the same authority." Here *as* represents all that precedes it.

Pronouns are the class of words most nearly related to nouns; being, as the name imports, representatives, or substitutes of nouns. Accordingly, they are subject to the same modification with nouns, of number, gender, and case. But with respect to gender, we may observe, that the pronouns of the first and second persons, as they are called, *I* and *thou*, do not appear to have had the distinction of gender given them in any language; for this plain reason, that, as they always refer to persons who are present to each other when they speak, their sex is commonly known, and therefore needs not be marked by a masculine or feminine pronoun. But as the third person may be absent, or unknown, the distinction of gender here becomes necessary; and accordingly it has in English all the three genders belonging to it: *He* is masculine, *she* is feminine, *it* is neuter.

We have observed that the use of pronouns is to prevent the repetition of nouns, and to make speaking and writing more rapid and less encumbered with words. An example will make this clear to the learner. "A woman went to a man, and told him, that *he* was in great danger of being murdered by a gang of robbers, *who* had made preparations for attacking *him*. *He* thanked *her* for *her* kindness, and as *he* was unable to defend *himself*, *he* went to a neighbour's." Now, if there were no pronouns, this sentence would be written as follows:—

"A woman went to a man, and told the man, that the man was in great danger of being murdered by a gang of robbers; as a gang of robbers had made preparations for attacking the man. The man thanked the woman for the woman's kindness, and as the man was unable to defend the man's self, the man left the man's house and went to a neighbour's."

Pronouns are, at once, the most general, and the most particular words in languages. They are commonly the most irregular and troublesome words to the learner, in the grammars of all tongues; as being the words most in common use, and subjected thereby to the greatest variety.

Pronouns are so called from the two Latin words *pro* and *nomen*, which signify for a noun, or for a name.

## OF ADJECTIVES.

An ADJECTIVE is a word which expresses some quality or property of a noun; as, "A good scholar, a virtuous action, a fine picture."

In English, the adjective is not varied on account of gender, number, or case. Thus we say, "A careless boy; careless girls."

Adjectives are varied only to express the degrees of comparison. They have three degrees of comparison, the positive, comparative, and superlative.

The positive degree expresses the quality of an object without any increase or diminution; as, *wise*, *great*, *good*.

The comparative degree increases or lessens the positive in signification; as, *wiser*, *greater*, *less wise*.

The superlative degree increases or lessens the positive in the highest or lowest degree; as, *wisest*, *greatest*, *least wise*.

Adjectives, or terms of quality, are a very plain and simple class of words. The name in its full literal sense means something added to something else. Therefore this part of speech consists of words which are added or put to nouns, in order to express something relating to them. They generally express the qualities of nouns, but this is not always the case; for there are some adjectives which have nothing to do with quality. But all adjectives express some quality, some property, some appearance, or some distinctive circumstance belonging to the nouns to which they are joined; as, "An industrious man; A virtuous woman; A short man; Each book; Every tree; That pen."

Adjectives are regularly compared, when the comparative degree is formed by the addition of *r* or *er*, and the superlative by *st* or *est*; as,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Large,	Larger,	Largest.
Small,	Smaller,	Smallest.

Or by prefixing the adverb *more* for the comparative degree, and *most* for the superlative; as,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
wise,	more wise,	most wise.
virtuous,	more virtuous,	most virtuous.

The comparative degree is, sometimes, formed by prefixing the adverb *less*, and the superlative by *least*; as,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Amiable,	less amiable,	least amiable.
Able,	less able,	least able.

Adjectives of but one syllable are, for the most part, compared by *er* and *est*; and those of more syllables than one, by *more* and *most*; as, *mild*, *milder*, *mildest*;

frugal, more frugal, most frugal. Some adjectives may be compared with equal propriety by *cr* and *est*, or by *more* and *most*. In such cases, the easy flow and perspicuity of the style should be regarded.

In some words the superlative degree is formed by adding the adverb *most* to the end of them; as, *nethermost*, *uppermost*, *foremost*.

The following adjectives are irregularly compared.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
good,	better,	best.
bad,	worse,	worst.
little,	less or lesser,	least.
much or many,	more,	most.
near,	nearer,	nearest or next.
late,	later,	latest or last.
far,	farther,	farthest.

Adjectives which cannot be increased or decreased in their signification, do not admit of comparison; as, *all*, *any*, *round*, *square*. One, two, three, twenty, thirty, &c. are sometimes called *numerical adjectives*.

*Pronominal adjectives* are those which are sometimes used as adjectives, and sometimes as pronouns, partaking of the nature and properties of both. They are sometimes called *adjective pronouns*, and are generally marked as *pronouns* in our dictionaries.

Pronominal adjectives, when used as pronouns, have number, case, gender, and person; as, "*Both* were once mine, but I have parted with *one*." When joined with nouns, they relate to them as other adjectives; as, "*Both* books were once mine, but I have parted with *one* book."

*A list of the principal Pronominal Adjectives.*

One, other, another, each, every, either, neither, this, that, these, those, all, any, both, same, such, some, former, latter, none. Of these, *one* and *other* are thus declined.

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Nom. one	Nom. ones	Nom. other	Nom. others
Pos. one's	Pos. ones'	Pos. other's	Pos. others'
Obj. one	Obj. ones	Obj. other	Obj. others

*Another*, is declined in the same manner, but wants the plural. *Former* and *latter*, have sometimes a possessive case; as, "*The former's* phlegm, was a check upon the *latter's* vivacity."

The following remarks and examples will serve to exemplify the pronominal adjectives.

*Some*, *other*, *any*, *one*, *all*, *such*, *none*, are sometimes called the *indefinite* kind, because they express their subjects in an indefinite manner.

*One*, when confined to number, is used as an adjective; as, "God hath made of *one* blood all nations of men." When used as a pronoun, it has a general signification, meaning people at large; as, "*One* is astonished at the vices of men." "*One* is apt to love *one's* self." This word is often used, by good writers, in the plural number; as, "The great *ones* of the world." "The boy wounded the old bird, and stole the young *ones*." "My wife and little *ones* are in good health."

The plural *others*, is only used when apart from the noun to which it refers; as, "When you have perused these papers, I will send you the *others*." The singular *other*, is used both when the noun is expressed, and when it is understood; as, "Give me the *other*;" or, "Give me the *other* book." When this word is joined to nouns, either singular or plural, it has no variation; as, "The *other* man," "The *other* men."

The word *another*, is composed of the indefinite article prefixed to the word *other*.

*None*, is used in both numbers; as, "*None* is so deaf as he that will not hear." "*None* of them are equal to these." It seems, originally, to have signified, according to its derivation, *not one*, and therefore to have had no plural; but there is good authority for the use of it in the plural number: as, "*None* that go unto her return again." Prov. xi. 19. "Terms of peace were none vouchsaf'd." MILTON. "*None* of them are varied to express the gender." "*None* of them have different endings for the number." LOWTH'S *Introduction*. "*None* of their productions are extant." BLAIR.

*Each*, *every*, *either*, are sometimes called the *distributive* kind, because they denote the persons, or things, that make up a number, as taken individually.

*Each*, includes all the individuals of a collective number; as, "*Each* of the men escaped unhurt." "He met ten beggars, and gave *each* a crown."

*Every*, includes all the individuals of a collective number, but is never separated from its noun, except in legal proceedings; as in the phrase, "*all and every* of them." It may be used in construction, with a plural noun, implying a collective idea; as, "*every* seven years."

*Either*, signifies only one of two individual persons, or things; as, "You may choose *either* of those two apples." To say, "*either* of the three," is therefore improper.

*Neither* imports, "*not either*;" that is, not one nor the other; as, "*Neither* of my friends was there."

*This*, *that*, *these*, *those*, are sometimes called the *definitive* or *demonstrative* kind, because they precisely point out the nouns to which they relate.

*This* and *these*, refer to things *nearest* or *last mentioned*; *that* and *those*, to things *further distant*, or *first mentioned*; as, "*This* house is mine, *that* is your brother's." "The path of virtue, and the road of vice, are open before you: *that* leads to happiness; *this* to misery."

"Some place the bliss in action, some in ease,

Those call it pleasure, and contentment *these*."

*Adjectives* are so called from the two Latin words *ad* and *jacio*, which signify to add to, to join to, to put to; and this name is given them because they are added, or put to nouns.

## OF VERBS.

A **VERB** is a word which expresses action, or being; as, "The birds *fly*; the horses *run*; the city *stands*; I *am*."

Verbs are of three kinds; active, passive, and neuter. They are also divided into regular, irregular, and defective.

An *active verb* denotes action or energy which terminates on some object; as, "Cesar *conquered* Pompey." "I *love* Penelope."

A *passive verb* denotes action received, or endured, by the person or thing which is the nominative; as, "Pompey *was conquered* by Cesar." "Penelope *is loved* by me." It is formed by adding a perfect participle of an active verb to the verb *be* through all its various changes of number, person, mood, and tense. Passive verbs are so called because the receiver or endurer is *passive*; that is to say, *does nothing*.

A *neuter verb* denotes simple being or existence, or it denotes action which is limited to the subject; as, "I *am*, thou *sittest*, he *stands*, the birds *fly*, Henry *plays*."

Verbs active are sometimes called *transitive*: Because the action terminates on the object, either expressed, or understood; as, "He *reads* a book." Here the object is expressed. "He *reads* well." Here the object is understood; that is, "He *reads words*, or *language*, or *books*, well."

Neuter verbs are sometimes called *intransitive*: Because the action expressed, or the manner of existing, that is represented, does not pass over to any object, but is wholly confined to the actor.

In English, many verbs are used both in an active and neuter signification; the construction only determining of which kind they are; as, to *flatten*, signifying to make even or level, is a verb active; but when it signifies to grow dull or insipid, it is a verb neuter.

It is difficult to distinguish, at all times, between the active, passive, and neuter verbs: *Illustration*—"Henry *struck* John; Henry *was struck* by John; Henry *plays*."

In the first sentence the verb is *active*, because the action of striking terminates on an object, *John*. Henry, the nominative, gives the blow, and *John*, the objective, receives it. In the second sentence, the verb is *passive*, because the action of striking, instead of terminating on the objective case, is received by the nominative. *John*, the objective, gives the blow; and *Henry*, the nominative, receives it. In the first sentence, Henry *does something*; that is, *strikes* a person. In the second, he *does nothing*; that is, another person strikes him. In the third sentence the verb is neuter, because the action of playing is limited to the nominative, and has no influence on any other word. Henry *does something*, but the action is confined to himself—We cannot say, "Henry plays John." Neuter verbs generally express simple being or existence; but some of them, it will be perceived, express the highest degree of action; as, I *run*, he *played*. Hence it appears that, action alone does not constitute the *active verb*: but it also implies an object acted upon, expressed, or understood. An *active verb* may be known by its admitting an object after it; a *neuter verb*, by its not admitting an object; and a *passive verb*, by its always admitting of the preposition *by* or *with* after it, with a noun or pronoun expressing the agent by which the subject or nominative is acted upon; as, "The master *is loved* by me." Passive verbs are formed from *active* verbs, therefore a *neuter verb* cannot become passive; but having, in some degree, the nature of a passive, it admits, in many instances, of the passive form, retaining still the neuter signification, chiefly in such as signify some sort of motion, or change of place or condition; as, "I *am come*; I *was gone*; I *am grown*; I *was fallen*." The same word is sometimes used as a passive verb, and sometimes as an adjective; as, "Thomas *is mistaken* by Henry." Here *mistaken*, in union with the verb *is*, is a passive verb, as it conveys the idea that Thomas is misunderstood. But when it means that Thomas is *wrong*, then the word *mistaken* is an adjective; as, "Thomas *is mistaken*."

To verbs belong **NUMBER**, **PERSON**, **MOOD**, and **TENSE**.

### OF NUMBER AND PERSON.

VERBS have two numbers, the singular and the plural; as, "He *runs*, we *run*," &c.

In each number there are three persons; as,

	Singular.	Plural.
First person.	I love.	We love.
Second person.	Thou lovest.	Ye or you love.
Third person.	He loves.	They love.

Thus, the verb, in some parts of it, varies its endings, to express, or agree with, different persons of the same number; as, "I *love*, thou *lovest*, he *loveth*, or *loves*;" and also to express different numbers of the same person; as, "thou *lovest*, ye *love*; he *loveth*, they *love*." In the plural number of the verb, there is no variation of ending to express the different persons; and the verb, in the three persons plural, is the same as it is in the first person singular. Yet this scanty provision of terminations is sufficient for all the purposes of discourse, and no ambiguity arises from it: the verb being always attended, either with the noun expressing the subject acting or acted upon, or with the pronoun representing it. For this reason, the plural termination in *en*, they *loven*, they *weren*, formerly in use, was laid aside as unnecessary, and has long been obsolete.

### OF MOODS.

Mood or Mode is the manner of representing action or being.

The nature of a mood may be more intelligibly explained to the scholar, by observing, that it consists in the change which the verb undergoes, to signify various intentions of the mind, and various modifications and circumstances of action: which explanation, if compared with the following account, and uses of the different moods, will be found to agree with, and illustrate them.



There are five moods of verbs; the **INDICATIVE**, **SUBJUNCTIVE**, **POTENTIAL**, **INFINITIVE**, and **IMPERATIVE**.

The *Indicative Mood* simply indicates or declares a thing, or asks a question; as, "He loves, he is loved;" "Does he love?" "Is he loved?"

The *Subjunctive Mood* expresses action or being in a doubtful or conditional manner; as, "If he write;" "If thou learn." The verb, in this mood, is always preceded by a conjunction expressed or understood, and is attended by another verb; as, "I will respect him, though he chide me;" "Were he good, he would be happy;" that is, "if he were good."

The *Potential Mood* declares the power, liberty, possibility, or necessity, of action or being; as, "It may rain; he may go, or stay; I can ride; he could walk; they should learn."

The *Infinitive Mood* expresses a thing in a general and unlimited manner; having no nominative, consequently neither number nor person; as, "to act, to speak, to be feared."

The *Imperative Mood* commands, exhorts, or entreats; as, "Depart thou; mind ye; let us stay; go in peace."

#### OF THE TENSES.

**TENSE** is the division of time.

There are six tenses, the **PRESENT**, **IMPERFECT**, **PERFECT**, **PLUPERFECT**, **FIRST FUTURE**, and **SECOND FUTURE**.

The *Present Tense* denotes present time; as, "I rule; I am ruled; I think; I fear."

The present tense likewise expresses a character, quality, &c. at present existing; as, "He is an amiable man;" "She is an amiable woman." It is sometimes used in speaking of actions continued, with occasional intermissions, to the present time; as, "He frequently rides; and he walks out every morning." It is even sometimes applied to represent the actions of persons long since dead, as transacting at the present time; as, "Seneca reasons well;" "Only by pride cometh contention, says Solomon."

When the present tense is preceded by the words *where*, *before*, *after*, *till*, as soon as, it is sometimes used to point out the relative time of a future action, as brought into present view; as, "When the stage arrives, we shall hear from home;" "Before he returns he will probably hear the news; or at least, soon after he arrives."

In animated historical narrations, the present tense is sometimes substituted for the imperfect tense; as, "He enters the territory of the peaceable inhabitants; he fights and conquers, takes an immense booty, which he divides among his soldiers, and returns home to enjoy an empty triumph."

The *Imperfect Tense* denotes past time, however distant; as, "I loved her for her modesty and virtue;" "They were travelling post when he met them."

The *Perfect Tense* denotes past time, but also conveys an allusion to the present; as, "I have finished my letter;" "I have seen the person that was recommended to me."

In the former example, it is signified that the finishing of the letter, though past, was at a period immediately, or very nearly, preceding the present time. In the latter instance, it is uncertain whether the person mentioned was seen by the speaker a long or short time before. The meaning is, "I have seen him some time in the course of a period which includes, or comes to, the present time." When the particular time of any occurrence is specified, as prior to the present time, this tense is not used: for it would be improper to say, "I have seen him yesterday;" or, "I have finished my work last week." In these cases the imperfect is necessary: as, "I saw him yesterday;" "I finished my work last week." But when we speak indefinitely of any thing past, as happening or not happening in the day, year, or age, in which we mention it, the perfect must be employed; as, "I have been there this morning;" "I have travelled much this year;" "We have escaped many dangers through life." In referring, however, to such a division of the day as is past before the time of our speaking, we use the imperfect; as, "They came home early this morning;" "He was with them at three o'clock this afternoon."

The perfect tense, and the imperfect tense, both denote time that is past; but the former denotes it in such a manner, that there is still actually remaining some part of the time to slide away, wherein we declare the thing has been done; whereas the imperfect denotes the thing or action past, in such a manner, that nothing remains of that time in which it was done. If we speak of the present century, we say, "Philosophers have made great discoveries in the present century;" but if we speak of the last century, we say, "Philosophers made great discoveries in the last century." "He has been much afflicted this year;" "I have this week read the king's proclamation;" "I have heard great news this morning." In these instances, "He has been," "I have read," and "heard," denote things that are past; but they occurred in this year, in this week, and to-day; and still there remains a part of this year, week, and day, whereof I speak.

In general, the perfect tense may be applied wherever the action is connected with the present time, by the actual existence, either of the author, or of the work, though it may have been performed many centuries ago; but if neither the author nor the work now remains, it cannot be used. We may say, "Cicero has written orations;" but we cannot say, "Cicero has written poems;" because the orations are in being, but the poems are lost. Speaking of priests in general, we may say, "They have in all ages claimed great powers;" because the general order of the priesthood still exists: but if we speak of the Druids, as any particular order of priests, which does not now exist, we cannot use this tense. We cannot say, "The Druid priests have claimed great powers;" but must say, "The Druid priests claimed great powers;" because that order is now totally extinct.

The *Pluperfect Tense* denotes past time, but as prior to some other past time specified; as, "I had finished my letter before he arrived."

The *First Future Tense* denotes future time; as, "The sun will rise to-morrow;" "I shall see them again."

The *Second Future Tense* denotes future time, but as prior to some other future time specified; as, "The two houses will have finished their business, when the king comes to prorogue them." "I shall have dined at one o'clock."

The natural divisions of time seem to be the *present*, *past*, and *future*; but to mark it more precisely, the past tense is subdivided into the *imperfect*, *perfect*, and *pluperfect*; and the *future*, into the *first*, and *second*—each having its distinct and peculiar province; and though they are sometimes used promiscuously, or substituted one for another, in cases where great accuracy is not required, yet there is a real and essential difference in their meaning.

#### OF THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

The conjugation of a verb, is its inflection, in all the moods, tenses, numbers, and persons.

*Regular verbs* are those which form the imperfect tense and perfect participle by adding *d* or *ed* to the verb.

*Irregular verbs* are those which do not form the imperfect tense and perfect participle by adding *d* or *ed* to the verb.

The English language, in forming the moods and tenses, admits a number of auxiliaries, or helping verbs. Those which are always auxiliaries, are *may*, *can*, *must*, *might*, *could*, *would*, *should*, and *shall*. Those which are sometimes auxiliaries, and sometimes principal verbs, are *do*, *be*, *have*, and *will*.

### Conjugation of the Verb, TO WRITE.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.	Plural.
1. I write.	1. We write.
2. Thou writest.	2. Ye or you write.
3. He, she, or it writes.*	3. They write.

##### IMPERFECT TENSE.

Singular.	Plural.
1. I wrote.	1. We wrote.
2. Thou wrotest.	2. Ye or you wrote.
3. He wrote.	3. They wrote.

##### PERFECT TENSE.

Singular.	Plural.
1. I have written.	1. We have written.
2. Thou hast written.	2. Ye or you have written.
3. He hast written.	3. They have written.

##### PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Singular.	Plural.
1. I had written.	1. We had written.
2. Thou hadst written.	2. Ye or you had written.
3. He had written.	3. They had written.

##### FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

Singular.	Plural.
1. I shall or will write.	1. We shall or will write.
2. Thou shalt or wilt write.	2. Ye or you shall or will write.
3. He shall or will write.	3. They shall or will write.

##### SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

Singular.	Plural.
1. I shall have written.	1. We shall have written.
2. Thou shalt or wilt have written.	2. Ye or you shall or will have written.
3. He shall or will have written.	3. They shall or will have written.

NOTE.—*Will* is not used in the first person of this tense; it being incompatible with the nature of a promise. We cannot say, "I will have written a year, on the first of October next;" but, "I shall have written," is a common expression.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

##### PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.	Plural.
1. If I write.	1. If we write.
2. If thou write.	2. If ye or you write.
3. If he write.	3. If they write.

##### IMPERFECT TENSE.

Singular.	Plural.
1. If I wrote.	1. If we wrote.
2. If thou wrotest.	2. If ye or you wrote.
3. If he wrote.	3. If they wrote.

##### PERFECT TENSE.

Singular.	Plural.
1. If I have written.	1. If we have written.
2. If thou hast written.	2. If ye or you have written.
3. If he has written.	3. If they have written.

\* When a verb, of the indicative mood, is used in the sacred or solemn style, the ending of the third person singular, present time, is ever in *th*; as, "He writeth, he learneth, he waketh, he loveth, he hateth," &c. The verb to be is an exception.

† *Hath* is used in the sacred and solemn style, instead of *has*; as, "He hath written;" "He hath loved," &c.

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

*Singular.*

1. If I had written.
2. If thou hadst written.
3. If he had written.

*Plural.*

1. If we had written.
2. If ye or you had written.
3. If they had written.

## FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

*Singular.*

1. If I shall or will write.
2. If thou shalt or wilt write.
3. If he shall or will write.

*Plural.*

1. If we shall or will write.
2. If ye or you shall or will write.
3. If they shall or will write.

## SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

*Singular.*

1. If I shall have written.
2. If thou shalt or wilt have written.
3. If he shall or will have written.

*Plural.*

1. If we shall have written.
2. If ye or you shall or will have written.
3. If they shall or will have written.

NOTE.—The subjunctive mood has no variation, in the form of the verb, from the indicative, except in the present tense of verbs generally, and the present and imperfect tenses of the verb *to be*. It may be of use to the learner to remark, that though we have used *if* only, in the conjugation of the verb in the subjunctive mood, yet any other conjunction, expressing doubt, may, with equal propriety, occasionally be used; as, *though, unless, &c.*

## POTENTIAL MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*Singular.*

1. I may, can, or must write.
2. Thou mayst, canst, or must write.
3. He may, can, or must write.

*Plural.*

1. We may, can, or must write.
2. Ye or you may, can, or must write.
3. They may, can, or must write.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

*Singular.*

1. I might, could, would, or should write.
2. Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst write.
3. He might, could, would, or should write.

*Plural.*

1. We might, could, would, or should write.
2. Ye or you might, could, would, or should write.
3. They might, could, would, or should write.

## PERFECT TENSE.

*Singular.*

1. I may, can, or must have written.
2. Thou mayst, canst, or must have written.
3. He may, can, or must have written.

*Plural.*

1. We may, can, or must have written.
2. Ye or you may, can, or must have written.
3. They may, can, or must have written.

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

*Singular.*

1. I might, could, would, or should have written.
2. Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst have written.
3. He might, could, would, or should have written.

*Plural.*

1. We might, could, would, or should have written.
2. Ye or you might, could, would, or should have written.
3. They might, could, would, or should have written.

NOTE.—It will be perceived that the auxiliaries, *may, can, and must*, are used to express present and perfect time; and that *might, could, would, and should*, are used to express imperfect and pluperfect time: but, they are not unfrequently employed indefinitely, expressing time present, past, or future.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE. To write.

PERFECT TENSE. To have written.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*Singular.*

2. Write, write thou, or do thou write.

*Plural.*

2. Write, write ye or you, or do ye or you write.

## PARTICIPLES.

## PRESENT.

Writing.

## PERFECT.

Written.

## COMPOUND PERFECT. Having written.

NOTE.—In making three persons in the imperative mood, grammarians have committed an error. For these expressions, *let me write, let him write, let us write, let them write*, are evidently addresses made to a second person.

That the verb *let*, is not an auxiliary, is very plain from its conjugation. It is of itself a principal verb; and, when immediately followed by another verb, it expresses the idea of permitting, or suffering an action to be done. The verb that follows *let*, is ever in the infinitive mood, the preposition to being understood; as, "*Let me learn;*" that is, "*Permit me to learn.*" "*Let him go;*" that is, "*Suffer him to go.*" We do not command, or exhort ourselves. "*Let me learn,*" is not a command given to myself, but to a second person; as, "*Let me learn;*" that is, "*Suffer thou me to learn.*" And, when we address con-

mands to a third person, we ever use the instrumentality of a second person. When we say, "*Let them learn,*" the meaning evidently is, "*Suffer thou them to learn.*" And when we say, "*Let us learn,*" we mean, "*Suffer thou, or suffer you, us to learn.*" Hence it appears, that a verb, in the imperative mood, is always in the second person.

For the conjugation of the verbs, *To love, To have, To be*, and the passive form of the verb, *To love*, see pages 9, 11, 13, 15, 17.

As the Indicative and Potential Moods are frequently used in asking questions, the following example of a verb conjugated interrogatively is subjoined, in order to give the learner a distinct idea of the different forms of conjugation.

Conjugation of the verb, *To BE*, used interrogatively.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*Singular.*

1. Am I?
2. Art thou?
3. Is he?

*Plural.*

1. Are we?
2. Are ye or you?
3. Are they?

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

*Singular.*

1. Was I?
2. wast thou?
3. Was he?

*Plural.*

1. Were we?
2. Were ye or you?
3. Were they?

## PERFECT TENSE.

*Singular.*

1. Have I been?
2. Hast thou been?
3. Has he been?

*Plural.*

1. Have we been?
2. Have ye or you been?
3. Have they been?

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

*Singular.*

1. Had I been?
2. Hadst thou been?
3. Had he been?

*Plural.*

1. Had we been?
2. Had ye or you been?
3. Had they been?

## FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

*Singular.*

1. Shall I be?
2. Shalt or wilt thou be?
3. Shall or will he be?

*Plural.*

1. Shall we be?
2. Shall or will ye or you be?
3. Shall or will they be?

## SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

*Singular.*

1. Shall I have been?
2. Shalt or wilt thou have been?
3. Shall or will he have been?

*Plural.*

1. Shall we have been?
2. Shall or will ye or you have been?
3. Shall or will they have been?

## POTENTIAL MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*Singular.*

1. May I be?
2. Mayst thou be?
3. May he be?

*Plural.*

1. May we be?
2. May ye or you be?
3. May they be?

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

*Singular.*

1. Could I be?
2. Couldst thou be?
3. Could he be?

*Plural.*

1. Could we be?
2. Could ye or you be?
3. Could they be?

## PERFECT TENSE.

*Singular.*

1. Can I have been?
2. Canst thou have been?
3. Can he have been?

*Plural.*

1. Can we have been?
2. Can ye or you have been?
3. Can they have been?

## PLUPERFECT TENSE.

*Singular.*

1. Could I have been?
2. Couldst thou have been?
3. Could he have been?

*Plural.*

1. Could we have been?
2. Could ye or you have been?
3. Could they have been?

Conjugation of the AUXILIARY VERBS, in their simple form; with observations on their peculiar nature and force.

That the auxiliary verbs, in their simple state, and unassisted by others, are of very limited extent; and that they are chiefly useful, in the aid which they afford in conjugating the principal verbs; will clearly appear to the scholar, by a distinct conjugation of each of them, unconnected with any other. They are exhibited for his inspection; not to be committed to memory.

## MAY.

## PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> 1. I may.	2. Thou mayst.	3. He may.
<i>Plur.</i> 1. We may.	2. Ye or you may.	3. They may.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> 1. I might.	2. Thou mightst.	3. He might.
<i>Plur.</i> 1. We might.	2. Ye or you might.	3. They might.

## CAN.

## PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> 1. I can.	2. Thou canst.	3. He can.
<i>Plur.</i> 1. We can.	2. Ye or you can.	3. They can.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> 1. I could.	2. Thou couldst.	3. He could.
<i>Plur.</i> 1. We could.	2. Ye or you could.	3. They could.

## SHALL.

## PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> 1. I shall.*	2. Thou shalt.	3. He shall.
<i>Plur.</i> 1. We shall.	2. Ye or you shall.	3. They shall.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> 1. I should.	2. Thou shouldst.	3. He should.
<i>Plur.</i> 1. We should.	2. Ye or you should.	3. They should.

## WILL.

## PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> 1. I will.	2. Thou wilt.	3. He will.
<i>Plur.</i> 1. We will.	2. Ye or you will.	3. They will.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> 1. I would.	2. Thou wouldst.	3. He would.
<i>Plur.</i> 1. We would.	2. Ye or you would.	3. They would.

## MUST.

*Must*, has no change of termination, but is joined with verbs in the present and perfect tenses.

## DO.

## PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> 1. I do.	2. Thou dost.	3. He doth, or does.
<i>Plur.</i> 1. We do.	2. Ye or you do.	3. They do.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> 1. I did.	2. Thou didst.	3. He did.
<i>Plur.</i> 1. We did.	2. Ye or you did.	3. They did.

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. Doing. PERFECT. Done.

## BE.

## PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> 1. I am.	2. Thou art.	3. He is.
<i>Plur.</i> 1. We are.	2. Ye or you are.	3. They are.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> 1. I was.	2. Thou wast.	3. He was.
<i>Plur.</i> 1. We were.	2. Ye or you were.	3. They were.

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. Being. PERFECT. Been.

## HAVE.

## PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> 1. I have.	2. Thou hast.	3. He has.
<i>Plur.</i> 1. We have.	2. Ye or you have.	3. They have.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> 1. I had.	2. Thou hadst.	3. He had.
<i>Plur.</i> 1. We had.	3. Ye or you had.	3. They had.

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. Having. PERFECT. Had.

The verbs, *have*, *be*, *will*, and *do*, when they are unconnected with a principal verb, expressed or understood, are not auxiliaries, but principal verbs; as, "We *shall* be here properly used in the present tense, having the same analogy to *should*, that *can* has to *could*, *may* to *might*, and *will* to *would*."

## D

*have* enough;" "I am grateful;" "He *wills* it to be so;" "They *do* as they please." In this view, they also have their auxiliaries; as, "I *shall have* enough." "I *will be* grateful;" "They *must do* it," &c.

The peculiar force of the several auxiliaries will appear from the following account of them.

*Do* and *did*, are used to add a particular emphasis to an affirmation, or to mark the time with greater positiveness; as, "I *do* speak truth;" "I *did* respect him;" "Here I am, for thou *didst* call me." They are also used in negative and interrogative sentences; as, "I *do not hate* him;" "Do you *hate* him?" To prevent the repetition of one or more verbs, in the same, or following sentence, we frequently make use of *do* and *did*; as, "Jack learns the English language as fast as Harry *does*;" that is, "as fast as Harry *learns*." "I shall come if I can; but if I *do not*, please to excuse me;" that is, "if I *come not*." *Do*, is always used in the present tense, and *did*, in the imperfect.

*May* and *might*, express the possibility or liberty of doing a thing; *can* and *could*, the power; as, "It *may* rain;" "I *may* write or read;" "He *might have* improved more than he has;" "He *can* write much better than he *could* last year."

*Must*, is sometimes called in for a helper, and denotes necessity; as; "We *must* speak the truth, whenever we do speak, and we *must not* prevaricate."

*Will*, in the first person singular and plural, intimates resolution and promising; in the second and third persons, only foretels; as, "I *will* reward the good, and *will* punish the wicked;" "We *will* remember benefits, and be grateful;" "Thou *wilt*, or he *will*, repent of that folly;" "You or they *will* have a pleasant walk."

*Shall*, on the contrary, in the first person, simply foretels; in the second and third persons, promises, commands, or threatens; as, "I *shall* go abroad;" "We *shall* dine at home;" "Thou *shalt*, or you *shall*, inherit the land;" "Ye *shall* do justice, and love mercy;" "They *shall* account for their misconduct." The following passage is not translated according to the distinct and proper meanings of the words *shall* and *will*; "Surely goodness and mercy *shall* follow me all the days of my life; and I *will* dwell in the house of the Lord for ever;" it ought to be, "Will follow me," and, "I *shall* dwell."—The foreigner, who, as it is said, fell into the Thames and cried out; "I *will* be drowned, no body *shall* help me;" made a sad misapplication of these auxiliaries.

These observations respecting the import of the verbs *will* and *shall*, must be understood of explicative sentences; for, when the sentence is interrogative, just the reverse, for the most part, takes place: thus, "I *shall* go; you *will* go;" express event only: but, "will you go?" imports intention; and, "shall I go?" refers to the will of another. But, "He *shall* go," and "shall he go?" both imply will; expressing or referring to, a command.

When the verb is put in the subjunctive mood, the meaning of these auxiliaries likewise undergoes some alteration; as the learners will readily perceive by a few examples: "He *shall* proceed," "If he *shall* proceed;" "You *shall* consent," "If you *shall* consent." These auxiliaries are sometimes interchanged, in the indicative and subjunctive moods, to convey the same meaning of the auxiliary; as, "He *will* not return," "If he *shall* not return;" "He *shall* not return," "If he *will* not return."

*Would*, primarily denotes inclination of will; and *should*, obligation: but they both vary their import, and are often used to express simple event.

## General remarks on the Moods and Tenses, and the inflection of Verbs.

The form of the verb *to be*, in the indicative mood, present tense, as exhibited on page 9, is now generally used by good writers. But the following form is the most ancient, and is found in the translation of the Bible, and other good English authorities, and is still sometimes used in popular practice.

## PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> 1. I be.	2. Thou beest.	3. He is.
<i>Plur.</i> 1. We be.	2. Ye or you be.	3. They be.

*Thou beest* is now obsolete, and *you be* is used instead.

The form of the present tense of the subjunctive mood, is frequently used to express future time, the auxiliary being suppressed; thus, instead of saying, "if he *should be*, if he *should go*, if he *should learn*;" we frequently say, "if he *be*, if he *go*, if he *learn*." *Should*, is probably more used to form the future tense of the subjunctive mood, than *shall*, or *will*.

The potential mood becomes subjunctive, by means of the conjunctions *if*, *though*, *unless*, &c. prefixed to its tenses, without any variations from the potential inflections; as, "If I *could deceive* him, I should abhor it."

It should be noticed, that the sign of the subjunctive mood, is not always expressed: supposition or hypothesis may be well expressed without the conjunctions, *if*, *though*, *unless*, &c. as, "Were it possible," for, "if it were possible."

In the subjunctive mood, there is a peculiarity in the tenses which should be noticed. When I say, "if it rains," it is understood that I am *uncertain* of the fact, at the time of speaking. But when I say, "if it rained," we should be obliged to seek shelter;" it is not understood that I am uncertain of the fact; on the contrary, it is understood that I am certain, it *does not rain* at the time of speaking. Or if I say, "if it did not rain, I would take a walk," I convey the idea that it *does* rain at the moment of speaking. This form of our tenses in the subjunctive mood, has never been the subject of much notice, nor ever received its due explanation and arrangement. For this hypothetical verb is actually a present tense, or at least indefinite—it certainly does not belong to past time. It is further to be remarked, that a negative sentence always implies an affirmative—"if it did not rain," implies that it *does* rain. On the contrary, an affirmative sentence implies a negative—"if it *did* rain," implies that it *does not*.

In the past time, a similar distinction exists; for "if it rained yesterday," denotes uncertainty in the speaker's mind—but "if it had *not* rained yesterday," implies a certainty, that it *did* rain.



In the Potential mood, some grammarians confound the present with the imperfect tense; and the perfect with the pluperfect. But that they are really distinct, and have an appropriate reference to time, correspondent to the definitions of those tenses, will appear from a few examples: "I wished him to stay, but he *could* not;" "I *could* not accomplish the business in time;" "It was my direction that he *should* submit;" "He was ill, but I thought he *might* live;" "I *may* have misunderstood him;" "He *cannot* have deceived me;" "He *might* have finished the work sooner, but he *could* not have done it better." It must, however, be admitted, that, on some occasions, the auxiliaries *might*, *could*, *would*, and *should*, refer also to present and to future time.

In poetry and law style, the verb *let*, in the imperative mood, is frequently omitted; as, "*Perish* the lore that deadens young desire;" that is, "*let* the lore perish;" &c. "*Be* ignorance thy choice, where knowledge leads to wo;" that is, "*let* ignorance be thy choice," &c. "*Be* it enacted;" that is, "*let* it be enacted."

Those tenses are called simple tenses, which are formed of the principal verb; as, "*I learn, I learned.*" The compound tenses are such as cannot be formed without an auxiliary verb; as, "*I have learned, I had learned, I shall or will learn, I may learn, I may be learned, I may have been learned,*" &c. These compounds are, however, to be considered as only different forms of the same verbs.

An active or a neuter verb may be conjugated differently from the usual manner, by adding its present participle to the auxiliary verb *to be*, through all its moods and tenses; as, instead of "*I teach, thou teachest, he teaches,*" &c. we may say, "*I am teaching, thou art teaching, he is teaching.*" This mode of conjugation has, on particular occasions, a peculiar propriety; and contributes to the harmony and precision of language. Hence some grammarians divide each tense into two forms, for the purpose of distinguishing the *definite* or *precise* time from the *indefinite*.

The *indefinite tense* represents general truths, and customary actions, without reference to a specific time; as, "*God is* infinitely great and just; man *is* imperfect and dependant; plants *spring* from the earth; birds *fly*; fishes *swim*; Scipio *was* as virtuous as brave; I *have accomplished* my design; Edgar *will obtain* a commission in the navy."

The *definite tense* marks the time with precision; as, "*I am writing*; he *is reading*;" "I *was* standing at the door when the procession passed;" "I *had been reading* your letter when the messenger arrived;" "He *will be preparing* for a visit, at the time you arrive;" "We *shall have been making* preparations a week before our friends arrive."

When a helping verb is joined to a principal verb, the latter is never varied; as, "*I can learn, thou canst learn, he can learn.*" When there are two or more auxiliaries joined to a principal verb, the first of them only is varied according to person and number; as, "*I may have written, thou mayst have written*; I *have been loved, thou hast been loved*; I *shall or will be loved, thou shalt or wilt be loved.*"

The neuter verb is conjugated like the active; but, as it partakes somewhat of the nature of the passive, it admits, in many instances, of the passive form, retaining still the neuter signification; as, "*I am arrived*;" "*I was gone*;" "*I am grown.*" The auxiliary verb, *am, was*, in this case, precisely defines the time of the action or event, but does not change the nature of it; the passive form not expressing a passion, or the receiving of an action, but only a state or condition of being. All verbs of the passive form, that will not admit the preposition *by* or *with*, and an agent after them, are *neuter verbs*.

The *tense* of passive verbs, and of verbs of the definite kind, is ascertained, only, by their auxiliaries; as, "*I am loved, I was loved, I shall be loved*;" "*I am writing, I was writing, I have been writing.*"

## A CATALOGUE OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

Present.	Imperfect.	Perfect Participle.
Abide,	abode,	abode.
Am,	was,	been.
Arise,	arose,	arisen.
Awake,	awoke, R.	awaked.
Bear, to bring forth,	bore, or bare,	born, or borne.
Bear, to carry,	bore,	borne.
Beat,	beat,	beaten, or beat.
Begin,	began,	begun.
Bend,	bent,	bent.
Bereave,	bereft, R.	bereft, R.
Beseech,	besought,	besought.
Bid,	bid, or bade,	bidden, or bid.
Bind,	bound,	bound.
Bite,	bit,	bitten, or bit.
Bleed,	bled,	bled.
Blow,	blew, R.	blown, R.
Break,	broke,	broken.
Breed,	bred,	bred.
Bring,	brought,	brought.
Build,	built,	built.
Burst,	burst,	burst.
Buy,	bought,	bought.
Cast,	cast,	cast.
Catch,	caught, R.	caught, R.
Chide,	chid,	chidden, or chid.
Choose,	chose,	chosen.
Cleave, to stick or adhere,	cleave, or cleft,	cleft, or cloven.
Cleave, to split,	clung, or cleft,	clung.
Cling,	clung,	clung.
Clothe,	clothed,	clad, R.
Come,	came,	come.

## REGULAR.

Present.	Imperfect.	Perfect Participle.
Cost,	cost,	cost.
Crow,	crew, R.	crowed.
Creep,	crept,	crept.
Cut,	cut,	cut.
Dare, to venture,	durst,	dared.
Dare, to challenge, R.		
Deal,	dealt, R.	dealt, R.
Dig,	dug, R.	dug, R.
Do,	did,	done.
Draw,	drew,	drawn.
Drive,	drove,	driven.
Drink,	drank,	drunk.
Dwell,	dwelt, R.	dwelt, R.
Eat,	eat, or ate,	eaten.
Fall,	fell,	fallen.
Feed,	fed,	fed.
Feel,	felt,	felt.
Fight,	fought,	fought.
Find,	found,	found.
Flee,	fled,	fled.
Fling,	flung,	flung.
Fly,	flew,	flown.
Forget,	forgot,	forgotten, or forgot.
Forsake,	forsook,	forsaken.
Freeze,	froze,	frozen.
Get,	got,	got.*
Gild,	gilt, R.	gilt, R.
Gird,	girt, R.	girt, R.
Give,	gave,	given.
Go,	went,	gone.
Grave,	graved,	graven, R.
Grind,	ground,	ground.
Grow,	grew,	grown.
Have,	had,	had.
Hang,	hung, R.	hung, R.
Hear,	heard,	heard.
Hew,	hewed,	hevn, R.
Hide,	hid,	hidden, or hid.
Hit,	hit,	hit.
Hold,	held,	held.
Hurt,	hurt,	hurt.
Keep,	kept,	kept.
Knit,	knit, R.	knit, R.
Know,	knew,	known.
Lade,	laden,	laden.
Lay,	laid,	laid.
Lead,	led,	led.
Leave,	left,	left.
Lend,	lent,	lent.
Let,	let,	let.
Lie, to lie down,	lay,	lain.
Load,	loaded,	laden, R.
Lose,	lost,	lost.
Make,	made,	made.
Meet,	met,	met.
Mow,	mowed,	mown, R.
Pay,	paid,	paid.
Put,	put,	put.
Read,	read,	read.
Rend,	rent,	rent.
Rid,	rid,	rid.
Ride,	rode,	rode, or ridden.†
Ring,	rung, or rang,	rung.
Rise,	rose,	risen.
Rive,	rived,	riven.
Run,	ran,	run.
Saw,	sawed,	sawn, R.
Say,	said,	said.
See,	saw,	seen.
Seek,	sought,	sought.
Sell,	sold,	sold.
Send,	sent,	sent.
Set,	set,	set.
Shake,	shook,	shaken.
Shape,	shaped,	shaped, or shapen.
Shave,	shaved,	shaven, R.
Shear,	sheared,	shorn.
Shed,	shed,	shed.
Shine,	shone, R.	shone, R.
Show, or shew,	showed, or shewed,	shown, or shewn.
Shoe,	shod,	shod.
Shoot,	shot,	shot.
Shrink,	shrunk,	shrunk.
Shred,	shred,	shred.
Shut,	shut,	shut.
Sing,	sung, or sang,	sung.

\* *Gotten* is nearly obsolete. Its compound *forgotten* is still in good use

† *Ridden* is nearly obsolete.



Present.	Imperfect.	Perfect Participle.
Sink,	sunk, or sank,	sunk.
Sit,	sat, or sate,	sat.
Slay,	slew,	slain.
Sleep,	slept,	slept.
Slide,	slid,	slidden.
Sling,	slung,	slung.
Slink,	slunk,	slunk.
Slit,	slit, R.	slit. R.
Smite,	smote,	smitten.
Sow,	sowed,	sown. R.
Speak,	spoke, or spake,	spoken.
Speed,	sped,	sped.
Spend,	spent,	spent.
Spill,	spilt, R.	spilt. R.
Spin,	spun,	spun.
Spit,	spit, or spat,	spit, or spitten.*
Split,	split,	split.
Spread,	spread,	spread.
Spring,	sprung, or sprang,	sprung.
Stand,	stood,	stood.
Steal,	stole,	stolen.
Stick,	stuck,	stuck.
Sting,	stung,	stung.
Stink,	stunk,	stunk.
Stride,	strode, or strid,	stridden.
Strike,	struck,	struck, or stricken.
String,	strung,	strung.
Strive,	strove,	striven.
Strow, or strew,	strowed, or strewed,	strown, strowed, or strewed.
Swear,	swore, or sware,	sworn.
Sweat,	swet, R.	swet. R.
Swell,	swelled,	swollen. R.
Swim,	swum, or swam,	swum.
Swing,	swung,	swung.
Take,	took,	taken.
Teach,	taught,	taught.
Tear,	tore,	torn.
Tell,	told,	told.
Think,	thought,	thought.
Thrive,	throve, R.	thriven.
Throw,	threw,	thrown.
Thrust,	thrust,	thrust.
Tread,	trod,	trodden.
Wax,	waxed,	waxen. R.
Wear,	wore,	worn.
Weave,	wove,	woven.
Weep,	wept,	wept.
Win,	won,	won.
Wind,	wound,	wound.
Work,	worked, or wrought,	worked, or wrought.
Wring,	wrung,	wrung.
Write,	wrote,	written.

Those verbs which are conjugated regularly, as well as irregularly, are marked with an R. Those verbs and participles which are the first mentioned in the list seem to be the most eligible.

When the form of the imperfect tense and perfect participle are different, the imperfect tense must not be connected with an auxiliary; as, "I have written;" not, "I have wrote." "The house was shaken;" not, "The house was shook." "He would not have gone, if he had known it;" not, "He would not have went, if he had known it."

It will be seen by the preceding list, that irregular verbs are of various sorts. 1. Such as have the present and imperfect tenses, and perfect participle, the same; as, Cost, cost, cost. Put, put, put.

2. Such as have the imperfect tense and perfect participle the same, but different from the present; as, Abide, abode, abode. Sell, sold, sold.

3. Such as have the present and imperfect tenses, and perfect participle, all different; as, Arise, arose, arisen. Blow, blew, blown.

Those verbs which are irregular only in familiar writing and discourse, and which are improperly terminated by *t* instead of *ed*, are not inserted. Of this class are such as *learnt, spelt, taught, &c.* the use of which termination should be carefully avoided in every sort of composition, and even in pronunciation. These however must be carefully distinguished from those necessary and allowable contractions, which are the only established forms of expressions; such as *dwelt, lost, felt, &c.* Words that are obsolete have also been omitted; such as *holpen, holden, gat, swang, &c.*

Defective verbs are those which are used only in some of the moods and tenses.

The principal of the defective verbs are the following.

Present.	Imperfect.	Perfect Participle.
Can,	could,	_____
May,	might,	_____
Shall,	should,	_____
Will,	would,	_____
Must,	must,	_____
Ought,	ought,	_____
	quoeth.	_____

\* *Spitten* is nearly obsolete.

*Quoth*, meaning to say, is obsolete in prose, but in poetry and burlesque it is sometimes used in the third person singular; as, *quoth he*.

*Wot*, meaning to know, is obsolete in modern style, but frequently used in scripture; as, "I wot not who hath done this thing;" "My master wotteth not what is with me in the house." It is used in the present and past tenses only.

*Wist*, meaning to think or imagine, is seldom met with, but in the early English writings, and in the English bible; as, "Wist ye not that I must be about my Father's business."

In most languages there are some verbs which are defective with respect to persons. They are used only in the third person, because they refer to a subject peculiarly appropriate to that person; as, *it rains, it snows, it hails, it lightens, &c.*

The whole number of verbs in the English language, regular and irregular, simple and compounded, taken together, is about 4300. The number of irregular verbs, the defective included, is about 177. Note.—The whole number of words in the English language, is about thirty-five thousand.

The verb is a primary part of speech, and next to the noun is of the most importance. Of the whole class of words it is by far the most complex.

Verbs are so called from the Latin word *verbum*, which signifies a word; and this name is given them by way of eminence.

## PARTICIPLES.

A PARTICIPLE is a word derived from a verb, and partakes of the nature of the verb, adjective, and noun.

Participles are of two kinds, present and perfect.

The present participle denotes present time, and generally ends in *ing*; as, *loving*.

The perfect participle denotes past time, and in regular verbs, corresponds exactly with the imperfect tense; as, *loved*.

The union of two or more participles, is, sometimes, called a compound participle; as, *having loved*.

Participles, like verbs, have an active, passive, and neuter signification.

Examples of the present participles.—"Knowing him to be my superior, I cheerfully submitted;" "A poet, speaking of the universal deluge, says," &c. "I saw him labouring in the field;" "Having a fair wind, we soon lost sight of land;" "The sun approaching melts the snow;" "Jacob worshipped his Creator, leaning on his staff;" "Being in haste, I must bid you adieu;" "Charles, being loved by his friend, is perfectly happy."

Examples of the perfect participles.—"Words fitly spoken, are like apples of gold in pictures of silver;" "By reading books written by the best authors, his mind became highly improved;" "Having finished his work, he submitted it;" "George having written the letter, sealed and despatched it."

Participles, as observed, are derivatives from verbs, formed by particular terminations, consequently, most nearly related to verbs; as, from the verb *love*, are derived *loving, loved*.

Between the participle and the verb there is such a nice gradation, that young learners often find it difficult to distinguish the difference. An illustration, on the subject, may be of service to the learner. It appears that the same word is sometimes a participle, and sometimes a verb. Examples: "John loved his book." Here *loved* is a verb; but in the following sentence it is a participle. "John, loved by all who knew him, was greatly lamented." "The Britons daily harassed the enemy;" Verb.—"The Britons, daily harassed by the Picts, were obliged to call in the Saxons;" Participle. "I admired and applauded him;" Verb.—"Admired and applauded, he became vain;" Participle. "He is heated with liquor;" Verb.—"The man, heated with liquor, could not brook the offence;" Participle. "He charged the enemy;" Verb.—"Charged with rich gifts from the king, he presents himself before the prophet," &c. Participle. "They are joined together;" Verb.—"Virtue joined to knowledge and wealth, confers great honours and respectability;" Participle. "He is raised to greatness;" Verb.—"Raised to greatness, he employed his power," &c. Participle. "I have erected a house;" Verb.—"Yon house, erected on the rising ground, drew me from my road;" Participle. "He lodged at the inn;" Verb.—"I found him lodged in prison;" Participle.

In forming the moods and tenses, participles are often associated with verbs; in this case, they seem to lose their character as participles, and become verbs. Hence, it may be remarked, that when the participle performs the office of a verb through all the moods and tenses, implies the idea of time, and governs the objective case of nouns and pronouns, in the same manner as verbs do, it cannot properly be called a distinct part of speech; for it is manifest, in such cases, that it is a species or form of the verb, and therefore may be called a verb; as in the following examples. "I am writing, or I had written;" He is teaching; He has spoken; We have been loved; They might have been taught."

NOTE.—A word cannot be a perfect participle, unless it will admit of *have* before it, and make sense.

The participle often becomes an adjective; as, "A loving friend; a moving spectacle; a heated imagination; lasting friendship." In such cases it admits of comparison by *more* and *most, less* and *least*; as, "A more admired artist; a most respected magistrate." It sometimes becomes a noun; as, "The burning of London was a distressing event." "By trusting to his honour I lost my money." In this usage it takes the plural form; as, "The overflowings of the Nile." "He seeth all his goings."

Sometimes the plural is used when an adverb is attached to the participle; as, "The goings out—the comings in." But this use of the participle is not deemed elegant, nor is it common in colloquial discourse.

NOTE.—Many words, such as *untouched, unweared, &c.* have the appearance of being participles, which are, in fact, adjectives; as, "Can we, untouched by gratitude, view the profusion of good which the Almighty hand bestows around"

us?" These words will not admit *have* before them, and make sense; we cannot say, "I *have* untouched him;" "I *have* unvexed him."

*Participles* are so called from the Latin word *participo*, which signifies, to *partake*; and this name is given them because they *partake* of the nature of verbs, nouns, and adjectives.

## OF ADVERBS.

An **ADVERB** is a word used to qualify the sense of verbs, participles, adjectives, and other adverbs; as, "He fought *bravely*;" "We heard them *secretly* contriving evil;" "Extremely fine weather;" "He speaks *very* gracefully."

Some adverbs are compared thus; *soon, sooner, soonest; often, oftener, oftenest*. Those ending in *ly*, are compared by *more* and *most*; as, *wisely, more wisely, most wisely*.

Adverbs form a very numerous class of words in every language; as they serve to modify, or to denote some circumstance of an action, or of a quality, relative to its time, place, order, degree, and the other properties of it, which we have occasion to signify. They seem originally to have been contrived to express compendiously in one word, what must otherwise have required two or more; as, "He acted *wisely*," for, he acted *with wisdom*; "*prudently*," for, *with prudence*; "He did it *here*," for, he did it *in this place*; "*exceedingly*," for, *to a great degree*; "*often and seldom*," for, *many and for few times*; "*very*," for, *in an eminent degree, &c.* Hence adverbs may be considered as of less necessity than any other class of words.

Adverbs may be reduced to certain classes, the chief of which are those of Number, Order, Place, Time, Quantity, Manner or Quality, Doubt, Affirmation, Negation, Interrogation, and Comparison.

### A list of the principal Adverbs.

1. Of *number*. Once, twice, thrice, &c.
2. Of *order*. First, secondly, thirdly, fourthly, fifthly, lastly, finally, &c.
3. Of *place*. Here, there, where, elsewhere, anywhere, somewhere, nowhere, herein, whither, hither, thither, upward, downward, forward, backward, whence, hence, thence, whithersoever, &c.
4. Of *time*.  
Of *time present*. Now, to-day, &c.  
Of *time past*. Already, before, lately, yesterday, heretofore, hitherto, long since, long ago, &c.  
Of *time to come*. To-morrow, not yet, hereafter, henceforth, henceforward, by and by, instantly, presently, immediately, straightways, &c.
5. Of *time indefinite*. Oft, often, oft times, oftentimes, sometimes, soon, seldom, daily, weekly, monthly, yearly, always, when, then, ever, never, again, &c.
5. Of *quantity*. Much, little, sufficiently, how much, how great, enough, abundantly, &c.
6. Of *manner or quality*. Wisely, foolishly, justly, unjustly, quickly, slowly, &c. Adverbs of quality are the most numerous kind; and they are generally formed by adding the termination *ly* to an adjective or participle, or changing *le* into *ly*; as, "Bad, badly; cheerful, cheerfully; able, ably; admirable, admirably."
7. Of *doubt*. Perhaps, peradventure, possibly, perchance.
8. Of *affirmation*. Verily, truly, undoubtedly, doubtless, certainly, yea, yes, surely, indeed, really, &c.
9. Of *negation*. Nay, no, not, by no means, not at all, in no wise, &c.
10. Of *interrogation*. How, why, wherefore, whether, &c.
11. Of *comparison*. More, most, better, best, worse, worst, less, least, very, almost, little, alike, &c.

Besides the adverbs already mentioned, there are many which are formed by a combination of several of the prepositions with the adverbs of place, *here, there, and where*; as, "Hereof, thereof, whereof; hereto, thereto, whereto; hereby, thereby, whereby; herewith, therewith; wherein, therein, wherein; therefore, (i. e. there-for,) wherefore, (i. e. where-for,) hereupon or hereon, thereupon or thereon, whereupon or whereon, &c. Except *therefore*, these are seldom used.

Some adverbs are *simple* or *single*, others *compound*; the former consists of but one word; as, *happily, bravely, &c.* The latter consists of two or more words; as, *at present, now a days, at length, at once, at first, by and by, &c.*

A preposition becomes an adverb when it has no object expressed or understood; or, when joined with a verb, and necessary to complete the sense of the verb; as, "The business was attended *to*;" "To cast *up*;" "To give *over*;" "He rides *about*;" "He was near falling;" "But do not *after* lay the blame on me;" "He died long *before*;" "He dwells *above*;" "They had their reward soon *after*."

The words *when* and *where*, and all others of the same nature, such as, *whence, whither, whenever, wherever, &c.* may be properly called *adverbial conjunctions*, because they participate the nature both of adverbs and conjunctions: of adverbs, as they denote the attributes either of *time* or of *place*; of conjunctions, as they conjoin sentences.

It may be particularly observed with respect to the word *therefore*, that it is an adverb, when, without joining sentences, it only gives the sense of, *for that reason*. When it gives that sense, and also connects, it is a conjunction; as, "He is good, *therefore* he is happy." The same observation may be extended to the words *consequently, accordingly, and the like*. When these are subjoined to *and*, or joined to *if, since, &c.* they are adverbs, the connexion being made without their help: when they appear single, and unsupported by any other connective, they may be called conjunctions.

The inquisitive scholar may naturally ask, what necessity there is for adverbs

of *time*, when verbs are provided with *tenses* to show that circumstance. The answer is, though *tenses* may be sufficient to denote the greater distinctions of time, yet, to denote them all by the *tenses* would be a perplexity without end. What a variety of forms must be given to the verb, to denote *yesterday, to-day, to-morrow, formerly, lately, just now, now, immediately, presently, soon, hereafter, &c.* It was this consideration that made the adverbs of time necessary, over and above the *tenses*.

*Adverbs* are so called from the two Latin words, *ad* and *verbum*, which signify to a verb; and this name is given them because they are, generally, added to verbs.

## OF PREPOSITIONS.

A **PREPOSITION** is a word which serves to connect words, and show the relation between them; as, "He went *from* London to York;" "She is *above* disguise;" "They are instructed *by* him."

All words, which express the relative situation of two things, are prepositions; as, *in*, when separately considered, implies, that one thing is within another. *On* implies, that one thing is under another. The *preposition* shows also the relative situation of moving objects; as, "William travelled *by* Boston *through* New-York *towards* Washington." Here *by, through, and towards*, show the relative situation of their respective objects, *Boston, New-York, and Washington, to William*.

Prepositions are not a very numerous class of words, but are of great importance in language.

### A list of the principal Prepositions.

Of	into	above		
to	within	below	at	on or upon
for	without	between	up	among
by	over	beneath	down	after
with	under	from	before	about
in	through	beyond	behind	against

Verbs are often compounded of a verb and a preposition; as, *to invest, to overlook*: and this composition sometimes gives a new sense to the verb; as, *to understand, to withdraw, to forgive*. But in English, the preposition is more frequently placed after the verb, and separately from it, like an adverb; in which situation it is not less apt to affect the sense of it, and to give it a new meaning, and may still be considered as belonging to the verb, and as a part of it. As, *to cast*, is to throw; but *to cast up*, or to compute, *an account*, is quite a different thing; thus, *to fall on, to bear out, to give over, &c.* So that the meaning of the verb, and the propriety of the phrase, depend on the preposition subjoined.

In the composition of many words, there are certain syllables employed, which grammarians have called inseparable prepositions; as, *be, con, mis, &c.* in *bedeck, conjoin, mistake*: but as they are not words of any kind, they cannot properly be called a species of preposition.

One great use of prepositions, in English, is, to express those relations, which, in some languages, are chiefly marked by cases, or the different endings of nouns. The necessity and use of them will appear from the following examples. If we say, "He writes a pen;" "they ran the river;" "the tower fell the Greeks;" "Lambeth is Westminster-abbey;" there is observable, in each of these expressions, either a total want of connexion, or such a connexion as produces falsehood or nonsense; and it is evident, that, before they can be turned into sense, the vacancy must be filled up by some connecting word: as thus, "He writes *with* a pen;" "they ran *towards* the river;" "the tower fell *upon* the Greeks;" "Lambeth is *over against* Westminster-abbey." We see by these instances, how prepositions may be necessary to connect those words, which, in their signification, are not naturally connected.

Prepositions, in their original and literal acceptation, seem to have denoted relations of place; but they are now used *figuratively* to express other relations. For example, as they who are *above* have in several respects the advantage of such as are *below*, prepositions expressing high and low places are used for superiority and inferiority in general; as, "He is *above* disguise;" "We serve under a good master;" "He rules *over* a willing people;" "We should do nothing *be-neath* our character."

The importance of the prepositions will be further perceived by the explanation of a few of them.

*Of* denotes possession or belonging, an effect or consequence, and other relations connected with these; as, "The house of my friend;" that is, "the house belonging to my friend;" "He died *of* a fever;" that is, "in consequence of a fever."

*To or unto* is opposed to *from*; as, "He rode from Salisbury *to* Winchester." *For* indicates the cause or motive of any action or circumstance, &c.; as, "He loves her *for* (that is, on account of) her amiable qualities."

*By* is generally used with reference to the cause, agent, means, &c.; as, "He was killed *by* a fall;" that is, "a fall was the cause of his being killed;" "This house was built *by* him;" that is, "he was the builder of it."

*With* denotes the act of accompanying, uniting, &c.; as, "We will go *with* you;" "They are on good terms *with* each other."—*With* also alludes to the instrument or means; as, "He was cut *with* a knife."

*In* relates to time, place, the state or manner of being or acting, &c.; as, "He was born *in* (that is, during) the year 1720;" "He dwells *in* the city;" "She lives *in* affluence."

*Into* is used after verbs that imply motion of any kind; as, "He retired *into* the country;" "Copper is converted *into* brass."

*Within* relates to something comprehended in any place or time; as, "They are *within* the house;" "He began and finished his work *within* the limited time."

The signification of *without* is opposite to that of *within*; as, "She stands

*without the gate.*" But it is more frequently opposed to *with*; as, "You may go *without* me."

The import and force of the remaining prepositions will be readily understood, without a particular detail of them. We shall, therefore, conclude this head with observing, that there is a peculiar propriety in distinguishing the use of the prepositions *by* and *with*; which is observable in sentences like the following: "He walks *with* a staff *by* moonlight;" "He was taken *by* stratagem, and killed *with* a sword." Put the one preposition for the other, and say, "he walks *by* a staff *with* moonlight;" "he was taken *with* stratagem, and killed *by* a sword;" and it will appear that they differ in signification more than one, at first view, would be apt to imagine.

Some of the prepositions have the appearance and effect of conjunctions; as, "After their prisons were thrown open," &c. "Before I die;" "They made haste to be prepared *against* their friends arrived;" but if the noun *time*, which is understood, be added, they will lose their conjunctive form; as, "After [the time when] their prisons," &c.

The article *a* before participles in the phrases *a* coming, *a* going, *a* walking, *a* hunting, &c. and before nouns; as, *a* bed, *a* broad, *a* shore, *a* foot, &c. is generally supposed to be a contraction of the preposition *on* or *at*; as, "I am at hunting;" "He is *on* board." Sometimes the article and noun are blended in one term, and become an adverb; as, *abed*, *abroad*, *ashore*, *aside*, *asleep*, &c.

The letter *o* before nouns in the phrases, "one o'clock, ten o'clock," &c. is a contraction of the preposition *on* or *of*; the same as to say, "one of the clock;" or, "one on the clock."

When two prepositions are placed together, the first is used adverbially; as, "He came *down* from the mountain;" here *down* is used as an adverb.

Prepositions are so called from the two Latin words *præ* and *pono*, which signify *before* and *place*; and this name is given them because they are, in most cases, placed before nouns and pronouns.

## OF CONJUNCTIONS.

A CONJUNCTION is a word that is chiefly used to connect sentences; joining two or more simple sentences into one compound one. It sometimes connects only words.

Conjunctions are principally divided into two sorts, the Copulative, and the Disjunctive.

The *copulative conjunction* connects words and sentences together, and continues the sense; as, "He *and* his brother reside in London;" "Two, *and* three, *and* four, make nine."

The *disjunctive conjunction* joins together words and sentences, but expresses opposition in the sense; as, "The hand of the diligent shall bear rule; *but* the slothful shall be under tribute."

Conjunctions are not numerous, but, like prepositions, are very essential to discourse.

### A list of the principal Conjunctions.

*Copulative.* And, if, that, both, then, since, for, because, therefore, wherefore.

*Disjunctive.* But, or, nor, as, than, lest, though, unless, either, neither, yet, notwithstanding.

Several words, belonging to other parts of speech, are occasionally used as conjunctions.

"He *provided* money for his journey;" "I will do it, *provided* you lend me some help." In the first sentence, *provided* is a verb; and in the second, a conjunction.

"*Except* him;" "Paul said, *except* these abide in the ship." In the first sentence, *except* is a verb in the imperative mood; and in the second, a conjunction. *Excepting* is also used as a participle and conjunction.

"*Both* horses were stolen;" "He is *both* virtuous and brave." In the first sentence, *both* is an adjective; and in the second, a conjunction.

"*Christ being* the chief corner stone;" "*Being* this reception of the gospel was anciently foretold." In the first sentence, *being* is a participle; and in the second, a conjunction.

"You may take *either* of the books;" "He will *either* sail for Canton or Japan." In the first sentence, *either* is a pronominal adjective; and in the second, a conjunction, corresponding with *or*.

"You shall take *neither* of the books;" "He will *neither* study nor work;" In the first sentence, *neither* is a pronominal adjective; and in the second, a conjunction corresponding with *nor*.

"He arrived *then*, and not before;" "I rest *then* upon this argument." In the first sentence, *then* is an adverb; and in the second, a conjunction.

"He contended *for* victory;" "I submitted, *for* it was vain to resist." In the first sentence, *for* is a preposition; and in the second, a conjunction.

"Our friendship commenced long *since*;" "I have not seen him *since* that time;" "*Since* we must part, let us do it peaceably." In the first sentence, *since* is an adverb; in the second, a preposition; and in the third, a conjunction.

*That*, when it can be changed into *which*, *who*, or *whom*, is ever a relative pronoun; as, "The book *that* he gave me;" or, "The book *which* he gave me." When it belongs to a noun, either expressed or understood, it is a pronominal adjective; as, "*That* man;" "Whose pen is *that*?" that is, "whose pen is *that* pen?" *That*, on all other occasions, is a conjunction.

Conjunctions and prepositions form that class of words called *connectives*, without which there could be no language; serving to express the relations which things bear one to another, their mutual influence, dependance, and coherence; thereby joining words together into intelligible and significant propositions.

Relative pronouns as well as conjunctions, serve to connect sentences; as, "Blessed is the man *who* feareth the Lord, *and* keepeth his commandments."

A relative pronoun possesses the force both of a pronoun and a connective.

Nay, the union by relatives is rather closer, than that by mere conjunctions. The latter may form two or more sentences into one; but by the former, several sentences may incorporate in one and the same *clause* of a sentence. Thus, "Thou seest a man, *and* he is called Peter," is a sentence consisting of two distinct clauses, united by the copulative *and*; but, "The man *whom* thou seest is called Peter," is a sentence of one clause, and not less comprehensive than the other.

Conjunctions very often unite sentences, when they appear to unite only words; as in the following instances; "Duty *and* interest forbid vicious indulgencies;" "Wisdom *or* folly governs us." Each of these forms of expression contains two sentences, namely; "Duty forbids vicious indulgencies; interest forbids vicious indulgencies;" "Wisdom governs us, *or* folly governs us."

Though the conjunction is commonly used to connect sentences together, yet, on some occasions, it merely connects words, not sentences; as, "The king and queen are an amiable pair;" where the affirmation cannot refer to each; it being absurd to say, that the king or the queen only is an amiable pair. So in the instances, "two *and* two are four;" "the fifth *and* sixth volumes will complete the set of books." Prepositions also, as before observed, connect words; but they do it to show the relation which the connected words have to each other: conjunctions, when they unite words only, are designed to show the relations, which those words, so united, have to other parts of the sentence.

As there are many conjunctions and connective phrases appropriated to the coupling of sentences, that are never employed in joining the members of a sentence; so there are several conjunctions appropriated to the latter use, which are never employed in the former; and some that are equally adapted to both those purposes; as, *again*, *further*, *besides*, &c. of the first kind; *than*, *lest*, *unless*, *that*, *so that*, &c. of the second; and *but*, *and*, *for*, *therefore*, &c. of the last.

Conjunctions not only connect sentences in construction, but they also begin sentences after a full period, manifesting some relations between sentences in the general tenor of discourse. The distinguishing use of the conjunction is to save the repetition of words; for this sentence—"John, Thomas, and Peter reside at York," contains three simple sentences; "John resides at York—Thomas resides at York—Peter resides at York;" which are all combined in one, with a single verb, by means of the conjunction *and*. Hence it appears that, conjunctions often unite sentences, when they appear to unite words only.

Conjunctions are so called from the two Latin words *con* and *jungo*, which signify *to join with*; and this name is given them because they *conjoin* or *join* together, words or parts of sentences.

## OF INTERJECTIONS.

An INTERJECTION is a word used to express passion or emotion; usually that, which is violent or sudden; as, "*Oh!* I have alienated my friend; *alas!* I fear for life;" "*O* virtue! how amiable art thou."

The English interjections, as well as those of other languages, are comprised within a small compass. They are of different sorts, according to the different passions which they serve to express. Those which intimate earnestness or grief, are, *O!* *oh!* *ah!* *alas!* Such as are expressive of contempt, are, *pish!* *tush!* of wonder, *heigh!* *really!* *strange!* of calling, *here!* *ho!* *soho!* of aversion or disgust, *foh!* *fie!* *away!* of a call of the attention, *lo!* *behold!* *hark!* of requesting silence, *hush!* *hist!* of salutation, *welcome!* *hail!* *all hail!* Besides these, many others, frequent in the mouths of the multitude, might be enumerated; but it is unnecessary to expatiate on such expressions of the passions, or emotions of the mind, as are scarcely worthy of being ranked among the parts of speech.

Sometimes, *verbs*, *nouns*, and *adjectives*, are uttered by way of exclamation, in a detached manner; as, "Bless me! Gracious heavens!" &c.

Interjections are so called from the two Latin words *inter* and *jacio*, which signify, *to throw between*; and this name is given them because they are thrown in, between the parts of a sentence, to express passion or emotion.

NOTE.—The *noun* and *verb* are the two principal parts of speech; that is to say, all other words are dependant on them, or added to them as auxiliaries. No complete sentence can be formed without the use of both, expressed or understood, unless when a pronoun is used for a noun.

## OF DERIVATION.

*Of the various ways in which words are derived from one another.*

HAVING treated of the different sorts of words, and their various modifications, which is the first part of Etymology, it is now proper to explain the methods by which one word is derived from another.

Words are derived from one another in various ways, *viz.*

1. Nouns are derived from verbs.
2. Verbs are derived from nouns, adjectives, and, sometimes, from adverbs.
3. Adjectives are derived from nouns.
4. Nouns are derived from adjectives.
5. Adverbs are derived from adjectives.

1. Nouns are derived from verbs; as, from "*to love*," comes "*lover*;" from "*to visit*, *visiter*;" from "*to survive*, *surviver*," &c.

In the following instances, and in many others, it is difficult to determine whether the verb was deduced from the noun, or the noun from the verb, *viz.*



"Love, to love; hate, to hate; fear, to fear; sleep, to sleep; walk, to walk; ride, to ride; act, to act," &c.

2. Verbs are derived from nouns, adjectives, and sometimes from adverbs; as, from the noun *salt*, comes "to salt;" from the adjective *warm*, "to warm;" and from the adverb *forward*, "to forward." Sometimes they are formed by lengthening the vowel, or softening the consonant; as, from "grass, to graze;" sometimes by adding *en*; as, from "length, to lengthen;" especially to adjectives; as, from "short, to shorten; bright, to brighten."

3. Adjectives are derived from nouns, in the following manner:

Adjectives denoting plenty are derived from nouns by adding *y*; as, from "health, healthy; wealth, wealthy; might, mighty;" &c.

Adjectives denoting the matter out of which any thing is made, are derived from nouns by adding *en*; as, from "oak, oaken; wood, wooden; wool, woollen;" &c.

Adjectives denoting abundance are derived from nouns, by adding *ful*; as, from "joy, joyful; sin, sinful; fruit, fruitful;" &c.

Adjectives denoting plenty, but with some kind of diminution, are derived from nouns, by adding *some*; as, from "light, lightsome; trouble, troublesome; toil, toilsome;" &c.

Adjectives denoting want are derived from nouns, by adding *less*: as, from "worth, worthless; care, careless; joy, joyless;" &c.

Adjectives denoting likeness are derived from nouns, by adding *ly*; as, from "man, manly; earth, earthly; court, courtly;" &c.

Some adjectives are derived from other adjectives, or from nouns, by adding *ish* to them; which termination when added to adjectives, imports diminution, or lessening the quality; as, "white, whitish;" i. e. somewhat white. When added to nouns, it signifies similitude or tendency to a character; as, "child, childish; thief, thievish."

Some adjectives are formed from nouns or verbs, by adding the termination *able*; and those adjectives signify capacity; as, "answer, answerable; to change, changeable."

4. Nouns are derived from adjectives, sometimes by adding the termination *ness*; as, "White, whiteness; swift, swiftness;" sometimes by adding *th* or *t*, and making a small change in some of the letters; as, "long, length; high, height."

5. Adverbs of quality are derived from adjectives, by adding *ly*, or changing *le* into *ly*; and denote the same quality as the adjectives from which they are derived; as, from "base," comes "basely;" from "slow, slowly;" from "able, ably."

There are so many other ways of deriving words from one another, that it would be extremely difficult, and nearly impossible, to enumerate them. The primitive words of any language are very few; the derivatives form much the greater number. A few more instances only can be given here.

Some nouns are derived from others, by adding the terminations *hood* or *head*, *ship*, *ery*, *wick*, *rick*, *dom*, *ian*, *ment*, and *age*.

Nouns ending in *hood* or *head*, are such as signify character or qualities; as, "manhood, knighthood, falsehood," &c.

Nouns ending in *ship*, are those that signify office, employment, state, or condition; as, "lordship, stewardship, partnership," &c. Some nouns in *ship*, are derived from adjectives; as, "hard, hardship," &c.

Nouns which end in *ery*, signify action or habit; as, "slavery, foolery, prudery," &c. Some nouns of this sort come from adjectives; as, "brave, bravery," &c.

Nouns ending in *wick*, *rick*, and *dom*, denote dominion, jurisdiction, or condition; as, "bailiwick, bishoprick, kingdom, dukedom, freedom," &c.

Nouns which end in *ian*, are those that signify profession; as, "physician, musician," &c. Those that end in *ment* and *age*, come generally from the French, and commonly signify the art or habit; as, "commandment, usage."

Some nouns ending in *ard*, are derived from verbs or adjectives, and denote character or habit; as, "drunk, drunkard; dote, dotard."

Some nouns have the form of diminutives; but these are not many. They are formed by adding the terminations, *kin*, *ling*, *ing*, *ock*, *el*, and the like; as, "lamb, lambkin; goose, gosling; duck, duckling; hill, hillock; cock, cockerel;" &c.

That part of derivation which consists in tracing English words to the Saxon, Greek, Latin, French, and other languages, must be omitted, as the English scholar is not supposed to be acquainted with these languages. The best English dictionaries, will, however, furnish some information on this head, to those who are desirous of obtaining it. The learned Horne Tooke, in his "Diversions of Purley," has given an ingenious account of the derivation and primitive meaning of many of the adverbs, conjunctions, and prepositions.

It is highly probable that the system of this acute grammarian, is founded in truth; and that adverbs, prepositions, and conjunctions, are corruptions or abbreviations of other parts of speech. But as many of them are derived from obsolete words in our own language, or from words in kindred languages, the radical meaning of which is, therefore, either obscure, or generally unknown; as the system of this very able etymologist is not universally admitted; and as, by long prescription, whatever may have been their origin, the words in question appear to have acquired a title to the rank of distinct species; it seems proper to consider them, as such, in an elementary treatise of grammar: especially as this plan coincides with that, by which other languages must be taught; and will render the study of them less intricate. It is of small moment, by what names and classification we distinguish these words, provided their meaning and use be well understood. A philosophical consideration of the subject, may, with great propriety, be entered upon by the grammatical student, when his knowledge and judgment become sufficiently improved.

## SYNTAX.

SYNTAX treats of the agreement, government, and proper arrangement of words and sentences.

*Agreement* is when one word is like another in number, case, gender, or person.

*Government* is when one word causes another to be in some particular mood, tense, or case.

### RULE I.

The nominative case governs the verb; as, "*I walk; thou lovest; he runs.*"

NOTE 1.—The infinitive mood, a sentence, or part of a sentence is, sometimes, the nominative to a verb; in which case the verb is ever in the third person singular: as, "*To err is human.*" "*To die is the inevitable lot of man.*" "*To see the bright sun is pleasant.*" "*That virtue will be rewarded and vice punished, is a doctrine plainly taught in the bible.*"

NOTE 2.—It is a general rule, that there should be no nominative case in a sentence without a verb expressed or implied; except it be in the nominative case independent. Sometimes, however, redundant words are peculiarly emphatical; as, "He that hath ears to hear, let him hear." In this sentence, the pronoun *he* has no verb to answer to it, expressed or understood; yet the construction is much more forcible than it would be to say, "Let him hear, that hath ears to hear."

NOTE 3.—An adjective, without a noun expressed, having the definite article before it, is used as a noun, and is generally in the third person plural; as, "*The sincere are always esteemed;*" "*Providence rewards the good.*"

The nominative case, generally, comes before the verb; as, "*He walks;*" &c. but when a question is asked or a command given, the nominative follows the helping verb, or the principal verb; as, "*Shall he come? Go thou.*" In many other instances the nominative follows the verb.

To find the nominative to a verb, ask the question *who? which? or what?* and the word that answers the question, is the nominative; as, "*Dick is idle.*" Who is idle? answer, *Dick*. *Dick* is, therefore, the nominative.

### RULE II.

The verb must agree with its nominative in number and person; as, "*He improves;*" "*The birds sing.*"

NOTE 1.—Every verb, except in the infinitive mood, must have a nominative case; but elegance often requires that the nominative be not expressed. This is especially the case, when the verb is in the imperative mood; as, "*Come on, learn, read.*"

NOTE 2.—When a verb is placed between two nominatives of different numbers, it may agree with either; but it is generally made to agree with the first, and this may be considered as preferable; as, "*Words are wind.*"

NOTE 3.—When the nominative is a collective noun, or noun of multitude, conveying an idea that the whole is considered as *one* united in a body, the verb and pronoun must agree with it in the singular number; as, "*The meeting was large, and it held three hours;*" but, if the nominative convey an idea that the whole is not considered as *one*, but as *many*, the verb and pronoun must be in the plural number; as, "*The council were divided in their opinion.*" No precise rule can be given to direct in every case, which number is to be used. Much regard is to be had to usage, and to the unity, or plurality of idea. In general, modern practice inclines to the use of the plural verb, as may be seen by the daily use of *clergy, nobility, court, council, commonalty, enemy*, and the like.

NOTE 4.—When a collective noun is preceded by *a*, *this*, or *that*, or any other word which clearly limits the sense to unity, it requires a verb and pronoun in the singular number; as, "*A company of troops was collected;*" "*This people is become a great nation.*" Yet our language seems to be averse to the use of *it*, as the substitute for nouns even thus limited by *a*, *this*, or *that*. "How long will *this people* provoke me, and how long will it be ere *they* will believe me for all the signs that I have showed among *them*?" "Liberty should reach every individual of a *people*; as *they* all share one common nature." In these passages, *it* in the place of *they*, would not be relished by an English ear.

### RULE III.

Articles and adjectives belong to nouns, which they qualify or define; as, "*A wise man; the king; this book, those books.*"

An adjective is usually placed before the noun to which it relates; as, "*A wise prince, a brave soldier.*" But it is frequently placed after the noun, especially in poetry; as, "*Fruit pleasant to the taste;*" "*The genuine cause of every deed divine.*"

The article commonly precedes the adjective and noun; as, "*A learned man;*" but it is occasionally placed between the adjective and noun; thus, "*So rich a dress;*" "*As splendid a retinue;*" "*He is too careless an author.*"



NOTE 5.—Hence, whence, and thence, are used with or without the preposition

from. In strictness, the idea of *from* is included in the words, and it ought not to be used. The adverb *how* should not be used before the conjunction *that*, or instead of it; as, "He was informed that he must go;" not, "*how* that he must go."

NOTE 6.—We have some examples of adverbs being used for nouns; as, "It is not worth their *while*." We are accustomed to use as adverbs, *a little*, and *a great deal*; as, "The many letters I receive, do not *a little* encourage me." "Indeed, they encourage me *a great deal*." Many nouns are used in the like manner, as modifiers of the sense of verbs. "You don't care *six-pence* whether he was wet or dry." *Johnson*.

NOTE 7.—Two negatives in English destroy one another, or are equivalent to an affirmative; as, "*Nor* did they *not* perceive him;" that is, "They did perceive him." "His language, though inelegant, is *not* ungrammatical;" that is, "It is grammatical." It is better to express an affirmation by a regular affirmative, than by two separate negatives, as in the former sentence; but where one of the negatives is joined to another word, as in the latter sentence, the two negatives form a pleasing and delicate variety of expression.

Some writers have improperly employed two negatives instead of one to express negation; as, "I *cannot* by *no* means allow him what his argument is intended to prove." I cannot by *any* means, &c. or, I can by *no* means. "*Nor* let me comforter approach me;" nor let *any* comforter, &c. "I never did repent of doing good, *nor* shall *not* now;" *nor* shall I now. "*Never* no imitator grew up to his author;" *never* did *any*, &c. "*Nor* is danger ever apprehended in such a government, *no* more than we commonly apprehend danger from thunder or earthquake;" *any* more. "Ariosto, Tasso, Galileo, *no* more than Raphael, were *not* born in republics." Neither Ariosto, Tasso, *nor* Galileo, *any* more than Raphael, was born in a republic.

## RULE VI.

Active verbs govern the objective case; as, "Alexander *conquered* the Persians."

Nouns and pronouns, especially in poetry, are frequently transposed from their natural order, and when in the objective case, come before the verbs which govern them, and when in the nominative, come after the verbs; as, "She with extended arms his *aid* implores." "*Him* declare I unto you."

*Whom*, and *which*, when in the objective case, always precede the verb.

NOTE 1.—It often happens that active verbs and their participles govern two objective words; one expressing the person, and the other the thing; as, "He taught *them* philosophy." And sometimes the active verb governs two nouns in the objective, both of which are expressive of things only; as, "The literati who make *etymology* the invariable rule of pronunciation."

The position of the pronoun sometimes occasions its proper case and government to be neglected; as in the following sentences; "Who should I esteem more than the wise and good?" "By the character of those *who* you choose for your friends, your own is likely to be formed." "Those are the persons *who* he thought true to his interest." "Who should I see the other day but my old friend." "Whoever the court favours." "Who do you see?" In all these instances it ought to be *whom*, the pronoun being governed in the objective case by the verbs esteem, choose, thought, see, &c. "He who, under all proper circumstances, has the boldness to speak truth, choose for thy friend." It should be, *Him* who, &c.

NOTE 2.—Some verbs were formerly used as transitive, which are no longer considered as such; as, "He repented *him*—flee thee away—he was survived—the sum was amounted;" &c. which are held improper.

NOTE 3.—Some neuter verbs assume a transitive form; as, "To live a life of virtue." "To die the death of the righteous." "To dream dreams." "To run a race." "To sleep the sleep of death." "To walk the horse." "To dance the child." "And rivers run potable gold." "The crisped brooks ran nectar." "Groves whose rich trees wept odoriferous gums and balms." "Grin a ghastly smile." "Her lips blush deeper sweets."

In these examples, and many others of the like kind, the verbs may not improperly be denominated active, although the nouns which follow them are not in strictness their objects; but they are either the names of the result of the verb's action, or closely connected with it.

Nearly allied to this idiom is that of using after transitive verbs, certain nouns which do not appear to be the objects of the verb, nor of precisely the same sense. Examples—"A guinea weighs five pennyweights, six grains." "A crown weighs nineteen pennyweights." "A piece of cloth measures ten yards," &c. But in these and similar examples, the noun may be called the objective case.

NOTE 4.—It sometimes happens that nouns in the objective case, carry the appearance of being governed by a verb, when they are, in fact, governed by a preposition, or some other word understood; as, "He resided many years in that street;" that is, *for* or *during* many years. "He rode several miles on that day;" that is, *for* or *through* the space of several miles. "He lay an hour in great torture;" that is, *during* an hour.

## RULE VII.

Participles have the same government as the verbs have, from which they are derived; as, "They found him *transgressing* the laws."—NOTE. Here *transgressing* is a present participle, from the active verb *transgress*, and governs *laws* in the objective case.

NOTE 1.—Participles are often used as nouns, in which character they may be in the nominative or objective case; and, like nouns, may govern the possessive case. It not unfrequently happens, that they perform at once, the office of a verb and noun; as, "The *taking* from another what is his, without his knowledge or allowance, is called stealing." "By the mind's *changing* the object to

which it compares any thing." "To save them from other people's *damning* them." "Such a plan is not capable of *being* carried into execution." "They could not avoid *submitting* to this influence." "Suppose a Christian, Platonist, or Pythagorean, should, upon God's *having* ended all his works, think his soul hath existed ever since." "Taking a madman's sword to prevent his *doing* mischief." "He was displeased with the king's *having* disposed of the office, or with his *having* bestowed it upon a worthless man." "Its excesses may be restrained without *destroying* its existence." "He was near *losing* his life."

NOTE 2.—When the participle of the present time is preceded by *a* or *the*, it takes the character and government of nouns; and, in most cases, must be followed by *of*; as, "The *repenting* of sinners gives joy to the celestial regions." "This was a *betraying* of the trust reposed in him." "These are the rules of grammar, by the *observing* of which you may avoid mistakes."

If either *the* or *of* be omitted, we should generally omit both. It would not be proper to say, "by *the* observing which," nor, "by observing of which;" but the phrase without either article or preposition would be right; as, "by observing which."

NOTE 3.—As the perfect participle and the imperfect tense are sometimes different in their form, care must be taken that they be not indiscriminately used. It is frequently said, "He begun," for "he began;" "he run," for "he ran;" "he drunk," for "he drank;" the participle being here used instead of the imperfect tense; and much more frequently the imperfect tense instead of the participle; as, "I had wrote," for "I had written;" "I was chose," for "I was chosen;" "I have eat," for "I have eaten."

The participle ending in *ed* is often improperly contracted by changing *ed* into *t*; as, "In good behaviour he is not *surpast* by any pupil of the school." "She was much *distrest*." They ought to be *surpassed*, *distressed*.

## RULE VIII.

Prepositions govern the objective case; as, "From New-York to Philadelphia; across the Delaware; over land; by water; through the air; with us; for me; to them; in you; among the people; towards us."

In general, the preposition is placed next before a pronoun; as, "*to* him, *for* us;" but it may be separated from a noun by an adjective and article; as, "In *the* busy scenes of life." An accurate and appropriate use of the preposition is of great importance.

NOTE 1.—Elegance requires, that we do not use prepositions in conjunction with those verbs that preserve their signification without the preposition; as, "Accept it; admit him; approve; address; attain." These are more elegant than "accept of it; admit of him," &c.

NOTE 2.—The preposition is often separated from the relative which it governs; as, "Whom wilt thou give it *to*?" instead of, "To whom wilt thou give it?" "He is an author whom I am much delighted *with*;" instead of, "*with* whom I am much delighted."

This is an idiom to which our language is strongly inclined; it prevails in common conversation, and suits very well with the familiar style in writing; but the placing of the preposition before the relative, is more graceful, as well as more perspicuous, and agrees much better with the solemn and elevated style.

In many cases, the relative pronoun is suppressed; as, "I did not see the person he came *with*;" that is, "*with* whom he came." But this is most common and most allowable in colloquial and epistolary language; in the grave and elevated style, it is seldom elegant; and never to be admitted to the injury of perspicuity.

NOTE 3.—Some writers separate the preposition from its noun, in order to connect different prepositions with the same noun; as, "To suppose the zodiac and planets to be efficient *of*, and antecedent *to*, themselves." This mode of expression, whether in the familiar or the solemn style, is always inelegant, and should generally be avoided. In forms of law, and the like, where great exactness is requisite, it may be admitted.

NOTE 4.—Prepositions are often omitted, especially before pronouns; as, "Give it *me*;" "Buy *him* some books;" that is, *to* me; *for* him. "Wo is *me*;" that is, *to* me. "He was banished the kingdom;" that is, *from* the kingdom. After the adjective *near*, *to* is often omitted; as, "To bring them *nearer* the truth." Also after *adjoining*; as, "A garden *adjoining* a river." After *worth* and *like* there is an ellipsis of *of* and *to*; as, "The book is *worth* a dollar;" that is, *worthy* of a dollar. "She is *like* the lovely Thais;" that is, *like* to the lovely Thais.

*Home*, after a verb denoting motion *to*, is always used without *to*; as, "We are going home." Nouns that signify the time *when*, or *how* long; or that signify space, are generally governed by prepositions understood; as, "He went home last week;" that is, *on* last week. "He lived four years at college;" that is, *during* four years. "Walk a mile;" that is, *through* the space of a mile. "All the days of my appointed time will I wait;" that is, *through* all the days; or, *during* all the days.

NOTE 5.—Different relations, and different senses must be expressed by different prepositions, though in conjunction with the same verb. Thus we say, "To converse *with* a person, *upon* a subject, *in* a house," &c. But two different prepositions must be improper in the same construction, and in the same sentence; as, "The combat *between* thirty French, *against* twenty English."

We are disappointed of a thing, when we have expected it, and cannot now obtain it; and disappointed in a thing, when we have obtained it, and find it does not answer our expectations. In some cases it is difficult to determine to which of two prepositions the preference is to be given, as both are used promiscuously, and custom has not decided in favour of either of them. We say, "Expert *at* a thing, and expert *in* a thing." The easy flow and perspicuity of the language, in such cases, should be chiefly regarded.

NOTE 6.—The preposition *among*, generally implies a number of things; it should not, therefore, be used before the adjectives *each*, *every*, *either*, and *one another*, or such as convey unity of idea; for example, instead of saying, "The same instinct is found *among* every kind of birds." It should be, *in* every kind.

NOTE 7.—The preposition *to*, is made use of before nouns of place when they follow verbs and participles of motion; as, "I went *to* London;" "I am going *to* town." But the preposition *at*, is generally used after the verb *to be*; as, "I have been *at* London;" "I was *at* the place appointed;" "I shall be *at* Paris." We likewise say, "He touched, or arrived *at* any place." The preposition *in*, is set before counties, cities, and large towns; as, "He lives *in* France, *in* London, *in* Birmingham." But before villages, single houses, and cities which are in distant countries, *at* is used; as, "He lives *at* Hackney;" "He resides *at* Montpelier."

NOTE 8.—In general, the same preposition should follow a noun, that elegance requires should follow the verb, from which the noun is derived.

Verbs.	Nouns.
To comply <i>with</i> .	In compliance <i>with</i> .
To engage <i>in</i> .	Engagement <i>in</i> .
To prevail <i>over</i> .	Prevalence <i>over</i> .
To condescend <i>to</i> .	Condescension <i>to</i> .
To depart <i>from</i> .	Departure <i>from</i> .
To bestow <i>upon</i> .	Bestowment <i>upon</i> .
To accuse <i>of</i> .	Accusation <i>of</i> .
To detract <i>from</i> .	Detraction <i>from</i> .
To derogate <i>from</i> .	Derogation <i>from</i> .
To differ <i>from</i> . In resemblance.	Difference <i>from</i> . In resemblance.
To differ <i>with</i> . In a quarrel.	Difference <i>with</i> . In a quarrel.
Averse <i>from</i> .	Aversion <i>from</i> .

NOTE 9.—English verbs are often compounded of a preposition and a verb; as, "To *understand*, *to outgo*, *to withdraw*." When the preposition is placed before the verb, it gives the verb a meaning very different from what it has, when placed after the verb; as, "*To understand*," signifies *to know*; "*To stand under*," signifies *to stand under something*.

NOTE 10.—In the use of prepositions, and words that relate to each other, particular regard should be had to the meaning of the words or sentences with which they are connected: all the parts of a sentence should correspond to each other, and a regular and clear construction should be carefully preserved throughout.

As this note comprehends all the rules and notes of syntax, it may, at the first view, appear to be too general to be useful: but its utility may be discovered by carefully observing the connexion and dependance of words in a sentence; and its importance will be readily admitted, when we consider that it may be properly applied to the correction of many erroneous forms of expressions, which none of the less general rules and notes can be brought to bear upon.

In order more fully to illustrate the subject, the following examples, which are, in some respect or other, faulty in their construction, are subjoined, and the errors pointed out.

"He was resolved of going to the city." To be resolved of doing an action is improper; the relation between the resolution and the action, not being clearly expressed by the preposition *of*, which denotes possession or consequence. It should be, *on*.

The relation or connexion expressed by the prepositions in the following sentences, is not clear and applicable. "In compliance to his injunctions;" "*with* his injunctions." "He became reconciled *with* his lot;" "*to* his lot." "Such business as came *into* their notice;" "*under* their notice."

"A beautiful field and trees," is not proper language; the article *a*, and the adjective *beautiful*, having the same relation to the noun *trees*, as to the noun *field*; but it would be absurd to say, "a beautiful trees;" it should be, "a beautiful field and fine trees;" or, "beautiful fields and trees;" and the construction is rendered clear and regular.

"This dedication may serve for almost any book that has, is, or shall be published." In this sentence the auxiliaries *has*, *is*, and *shall be*, equally relate to the verb *published*. But it would be manifestly improper to say, "any book that *has published*"—and "*is published*," is unnecessary. It should be, "any book that *has been*, or *shall be published*."

"He was more beloved, but not so much admired, as Cinthio." It should be, "he was more beloved than Cinthio, but not so much admired." This example presents a most irregular construction, namely, "he was more beloved as Cinthio."

"They presently grow into good humour, and good language towards the crown;" "grow into good language," is very improper.

"The court of chancery frequently mitigates and breaks the teeth of the common law." In this construction, the first verb is said, "to mitigate the teeth of the common law," which is an evident solecism. "There is never wanting a set of evil instruments, who either out of mad zeal, private hatred, or filthy lucre, are always ready," &c. We say properly, "A man acts out of mad zeal," or, "out of private hatred;" but we cannot say, if we mean to speak English, "he acts out of filthy lucre."

In the use of words and phrases which, in point of time, relate to each other, a due regard to that relation should be observed. Instead of saying, "The Lord hath given, and the Lord hath taken away;" we should say, "The Lord gave, and the Lord hath taken away." Instead of, "I remember the family more than twenty years;" it should be, "I have remembered the family more than twenty years."

It is not easy to give particular rules for the management of the moods and tenses of verbs with respect to one another, so that they may be proper and consistent. The best rule that can be given, is this very general one; *To observe what the sense necessarily requires.*

## RULE IX.

Neuter verbs have the same case after, as before them; as, "I am *he* whom they invited;" "*It* may be, or, might have been *he*;" but *it* cannot be, or, could not have been *I*;" "*It* is impossible to be *they*;" "*It* seems to have been *he*, who conducted himself so wisely;" "*It* appeared to be *she*, that transacted the business;" "*I* understood *it* to be *him*;" "*I* believe *it* to have been *them*;" "*We* at first took *it* to be *her*; but were afterwards convinced that *it* was not *she*;" "*He* is not the *person*, who it seemed *he* was;" "*He* is really the *person*, who *he* appeared to be;" "*She* is not now the *woman*, whom they represented *her* to have been;" "*Whom* do you fancy *him* to be?"

As neuter verbs express only being, or a state or condition of being, they cannot with propriety be said to govern; and it is manifest that a noun or pronoun following them, can only express the subject in a different form, or under a different name or term, and must, therefore, be in the same case as the one preceding, whether nominative or objective. Perhaps this subject will be more intelligible to the learner, by observing, that the words in the cases preceding and following the verb *to be*, may be said to be in *apposition* to each other. Thus, in the sentence, "*I* understood *it* to be *him*;" the words *it* and *him* are in apposition; that is, they refer to the same thing, and are in the same case. This rule is generally applied to the verb *to be*; but it is occasionally applicable to other neuter verbs; as in the following examples, "*A calf* becomes an *ox*." "*She* looks a *goddess*, and *she* moves a *queen*."

"Tom struts a *soldier*, open, bold, and brave:  
Will sneaks a *scriv'ner*, an exceeding knave."—POPE.

"Before the glimmering *moon*, with borrow'd light,  
Shone *queen* amid the silver host of night;  
High in the heavens *thou* reign'st superior *Lord*,  
By suppliant angels worship'd and ador'd."—DWIGHT.

"To *them* gave *he* power to become the *sons* of God."

The noun or pronoun can never be in the objective case, after the neuter verb, unless the verb be in the infinitive mood.

NOTE 1.—Passive verbs, and participles of neuter verbs, followed by a noun or pronoun, must have the same case after, as before them; as, "The *child* was named *Thomas*;" "*He* was called *Cesar*;" "*Homer* is styled the *prince* of poets;" "*James* was created a *duke*;" "*The general* was saluted *emperor*;" "*The professor* was appointed *tutor* to the prince;" "Now in the fifteenth year of the reign of Tiberius *Cesar*, *Pontius Pilate* being *Governor* of Judea, and *Herod* being *Tetrarch* of Galilee, *Annas* and *Caiaphas* being the high *Priests*, the word of God came unto John."

## RULE X.

A noun or pronoun, signifying possession, is governed by the noun it possesses; as, "*My father's* house;" "*Man's* happiness;" "*Virtue's* reward;" "*The book* is *hers*;" "*Its* value is great;" "*Sarah's* hat is lost, but *her* gloves are here."

When the thing possessed is obvious, it is usual to omit the name; as, "Let us go to *St. Paul's*," that is, *church*; "He is at the *President's*," that is, *house*. In poetry the additional *s* is frequently omitted, but the apostrophe retained in the same manner as when plural nouns end in *s*; as, "*The wrath of Peleus' son*." This seems not so allowable in prose; which the following erroneous examples will illustrate. "*Moses' minister*;" "*Festus came into Pelia's room*;" "These answers were made to the *witness' questions*."

But in cases which would give too much of the hissing sound, or increase the difficulty of pronunciation, the omission takes place even in prose; as, "For *righteousness' sake*;" "For *conscience' sake*."

The possessive case is sometimes expressed by a circumlocution, that is to say, by several words instead of one, which are, in effect, but one name; as, "*The king of England's* throne." Sometimes by two or more nouns in apposition; as, "For *David my servant's* sake." And sometimes several nouns come together in the possessive case that are not in apposition; as, "*I had the physician's, the surgeon's, and the apothecary's assistance*."

In expressions like these, it may occasion some doubt to which of the nouns the sign of the possessive should be annexed, or whether it should be subjoined to them all. We subjoin a few remarks on the subject, which may be useful to the learner.

NOTE 1.—When the possessor is described by a circumlocution, the sign of the possessive is commonly added to the last term only; as, "*The duke of Bridge-water's* canal;" "*The bishop of Landaff's* excellent book;" "*The lord mayor of London's* authority;" "*The captain of the guard's* house."

NOTE 2.—When the possessor is described by two or more nouns in apposition, the sign of the possessive is generally annexed to the last only; as, "*Paul the apostle's* advice;" "*John the baptist's* head."

But when a pause is proper, and the governing noun is not expressed, it appears to be requisite, that the sign should be applied to the first possessive only, and understood of the rest; as, "*I reside at lord Stormont's, my old patron and benefactor*." "*Whose glory did he emulate?*" "*He emulated Cesar's, the greatest general of antiquity*." "*I left the parcel at Smith's, the stationer and bookseller*."

In the following sentences it would appear very awkward to place the sign, either at the end of each of the clauses in apposition, or at the end of the latter one only; as, "*These psalms are David's, the king, priest, and prophet of the Jewish people*." "*We stayed a month at lord Lyttelton's, the ornament of his country, and the friend of every virtue*." The sign of the possessive case may, very properly, be understood at the end of these members; an ellipsis at the latter part of sea-



tences being a common construction in our language, as the learner will see by one or two examples; "They wished to submit, but he did not;" that is, "he did not wish to submit." "He said it was their concern, but not his;" that is, "not his concern."

If we annex the sign of the possessive to the end of the last clause only, we shall perceive that a resting-place is wanted, and that the connecting circumstance is placed too remotely, to be either perspicuous or agreeable; as, "Whose glory did he emulate?" "He emulated *Cesar*, the greatest general of antiquity." "These psalms are *David*, the king, priest, and prophet of the Jewish people's." It is much better to say, "This is *Paul's* advice, the Christian hero, and great apostle of the gentiles," than, "This is *Paul*, the Christian hero, and great apostle of the gentiles' advice." On the other hand, the application of the possessive sign to both or all of the nouns in apposition, would be generally harsh and displeasing, and perhaps in some cases incorrect; as, "The emperor's *Leopold's*; *King's George's*; *Charles's* the second's;" "I left the parcel at *Smith's*, the book-seller's, and stationer's."

When the thing possessed is represented as belonging to a number severally specified, which consequently cannot be in apposition, the sign of the possessive is annexed to the last only, and understood to the rest; as, "John and Eliza's books;" "This was my father, mother, and uncle's advice." But when any words intervene, perhaps on account of the increased pause, the sign of the possessive should be repeated with each; as, "They are John's as well as Eliza's books;" "I had the physician's, the surgeon's, and the apothecary's assistance." Sometimes, though rarely, two nouns in the possessive case immediately succeed each other, in the following form; as, "My friend's wife's sister;" better expressed, perhaps, by saying, "The sister of my friend's wife."

The preposition of before the name of the possessor, is generally equivalent to the possessive case; thus, instead of saying, "Virtue's reward;" we may say, "The reward of virtue;" and, as the English possessive has often an unpleasant sound, we daily make use of the particle *of*, to express the same relation. There is something awkward in the following sentences, in which this method has not been taken. "The general in the army's name, published a declaration." "The commons' vote." "The lords' house." "Unless he be very ignorant of the kingdom's condition." It would certainly be better to say, "In the name of the army." "The vote of the commons." "The house of lords." "The condition of the kingdom." It is also rather harsh to use two possessives with the same noun; as, "Whom he acquainted with the pope's and the king's pleasure." "The pleasure of the pope and the king," would be better. It would likewise sound better to say, "The head of John the baptist;" than, "John the baptist's head."

Little explanatory circumstances are particularly awkward between a possessive case, and the word or words which usually follow it; as, "She began to extol the farmer's, (as she called him,) excellent understanding." It ought to be, "the excellent understanding of the farmer, as she called him."

We sometimes meet with three substantives dependant on one another, and connected by the preposition of applied to each of them; as, "The severity of the distress of the son of the king, touched the nation:" but this mode of expression is not to be recommended. It would be better to say; "The severe distress of the king's son, touched the nation."

NOTE 4.—When *of* is used before the possessive case of nouns, there is a double possessive, the thing possessed not being repeated; as, "Vital air was a discovery of Priestley's." The sense of which is, "Vital air was one of the discoveries of Priestley." This idiom prevents the repetition of the same word; but, except to prevent ambiguity, it seems to be allowable in those cases only, which suppose the existence of a plurality of subjects of the same kind. In the expressions, "A soldier of the king's;" "A sentiment of my brother's;" more than one soldier and one sentiment, are supposed to belong to the possessor. But in the following sentence, this plurality is neither intimated, nor necessarily supposed; and, therefore, the double possessive is not used. "The crown of the king was stolen." Sometimes, however, unless we throw the sentence into another form, this method is absolutely necessary, without regard to plurality; in order to distinguish the sense, and to give the idea of property, which is the most important use of the relatives expressed by the possessive case; for the expressions, "This picture of my friend," and "This picture of my friend's," suggest very different ideas. The latter phrase expresses property in the strictest sense.

The preposition of does not always denote possession; it denotes also, consisting of or in, concerning, &c. and in these cases, its place cannot be supplied by the possessive case; thus, a crown of gold, cannot be converted into gold's crown; nor cloth of wool, into wool's cloth; nor a cup of water, into water's cup; nor the house of Lords, into the Lords' house.

NOTE 5.—Nouns govern pronouns as well as nouns, in the possessive case; as, "Every tree is known by its fruit;" "That desk is mine."

The possessive *its* is often improperly used for *his* or *it is*; as, "Its my book;" instead of "It is my book."

NOTE 6.—Participles are often used for nouns, and have the like effect in governing nouns in the possessive case; as, "A courier arrived from Madrid, with an account of his Catholic majesty's having agreed to the neutrality." "In case of his Catholic majesty's dying without issue." "Averse to the nation's involving itself in another war." "Who can have no notion of the same person's possessing different accomplishments." "What is the reason of this person's dismissing his servant so hastily?" "I remember *its* being recorded a great exploit." "Much will depend on the pupil's composing, but more on his reading." It would not be accurate to say, "Much will depend on the pupil composing," &c.

#### RULE XI.

Two or more nouns, signifying the same thing, are put, by apposition, in the same case; as, "Paul, the Apostle;" "Solomon, the son of David, king of Israel;" "Cicero, the great orator, philosopher, and statesman;" "I much esteem his Excellency, George Washington, President of the United States."

By apposition is understood, something added by way of illustration; or, in order more fully to define and explain the meaning or sense of the subject.

NOTE 1.—To express emphasis more fully, a pronoun is often put in apposition to a preceding noun; as, "Augustus, the Roman emperor, he who succeeded Julius Cesar, is differently described by historians." "After this, Jesus went down to Capernaum, he and his mother," &c.

NOTE 2.—When two or more nominative nouns, are placed together in apposition, the verb must agree with the first, or most important word; as, "The founders of Rome, a gang of thieves and villains, were a collection from many tribes." "The Apostles, a set of illiterate men, by their preaching destroyed heathen idolatry and superstition."

NOTE 3.—Nouns of the singular number, that are in apposition, must ever have a singular verb and pronoun to agree with them; for they denote but one individual person or thing.

NOTE 4.—In the following sentences, a noun in the plural, stands in apposition to two nouns in the singular, joined by the conjunction *or*. "The terms of our law will hardly find words that answer them in the Spanish or Italian, no scanty languages."

NOTE 5.—Nouns are not unfrequently set in apposition to sentences; as, "The Dutch were formerly in possession of the coasting trade and freight of almost all trading nations; they were also the bankers for all Europe; advantages by which they have gained immense sums." Here, *advantages* is in apposition to the two first members of the sentence.

#### RULE XII.

When an address is made to a person, the noun or pronoun is put in the nominative case independent; as, "O, house of Israel;" "O king, live forever;" "Rabbi, Rabbi;" "Yes, Sir, I will go;" "Colonel, I am your most obedient;" "Let me ask you one question, Sir Harry;" "It must be so, Plato, thou reasonest well;" "O thou man of God."

If the person who makes the address, is affected with some sudden emotion, or passion of the mind, he generally makes use of an interjection; as, "O, generation of vipers!" "O, Sir Harry!" Sometimes the interjection is omitted; as, "Thou traitor; thou villain; ye simple ones; master, we perish."

NOTE 1.—Interjections require the objective case of a pronoun of the first person after them; as, "Ah! me;" but the nominative of a noun or pronoun of the second person, or third person; as, "Oh! thou," &c.

#### RULE XIII.

Pronouns must agree with their antecedents, or the nouns they represent, in gender and number; as, "This is the man whom I love;" "That is the vice which I hate;" "The king and the queen put on their robes;" "Esther put on her royal apparel—she obtained favour in his sight—then the king said unto her;" "This is the heir; come let us kill him, and let us seize on his inheritance;" "A river went out of Eden to water the garden, and it was parted."

The relative is of the same person as the antecedent, and the verb agrees with it accordingly; as, "Thou who lovest wisdom;" "I who speak from experience." Of this rule there are many violations to be met with; a few of which will be sufficient to put the learner on his guard; as, "Each of the sexes should keep within its particular bounds, and content themselves with the advantages of their particular districts;" better thus, "The sexes should keep within their particular bounds," &c. Again, "Can any one, on their entrance into the world, be fully secure that they shall not be deceived?" better thus, "on his entrance," and "that he shall." Again, "One should not think too favourably of ourselves;" should be, "of one's self." "He had one acquaintance which poisoned his disciple;" better thus, "who poisoned." When a person or persons are referred to without distinction of gender, the masculine is generally understood; as, "Every one should do his own work." Every relative must have an antecedent expressed or understood; as, "Who is fatal to others, is fatal to himself;" that is, "The man who is fatal to others."

This rule implies, not only that, pronouns must agree with the nouns for which they stand, in gender and number; but also that, relatives must, in like manner, agree with their antecedents, whether nouns or pronouns.

Whom, which, what, and the relative that, though in the objective case, are always placed before the verb; as well as the compounds whomever, whomsoever, &c. as, "He whom ye seek;" "Whomsoever you please to appoint;" "This is what, or the thing which or that, I wanted."

NOTE 1.—Personal pronouns, being used immediately to supply the place of nouns, should not be expressed in the same simple sentence with the nouns which they represent. The following sentences are therefore erroneous. "The king he is just;" "I saw her the queen;" "The men they were there;" "Many words they darken speech;" "My banks they are furnish'd with bees." These personals are superfluous, as there is not the least occasion for a substitute in the same part where the principal word is present. The nominative case they in the following sentence, is also superfluous; "Who, instead of going about doing good, they are perpetually intent upon mischief." There is an exception to this rule, however, in formal writings, oaths, and the like; as, "I, Richard Roe, of Boston;" "You, John Doe, of New-York;" "We, Richard Roe, and John Doe, of Philadelphia."

NOTE 2.—A pronoun should not be used instead of a noun, when it would occasion ambiguity in the meaning of the sentence; but the noun should be repeated. The following sentence is inaccurate; "We see the beautiful variety of colour in the rainbow, and are led to consider the cause of it." Here the



sentence is left ambiguous by the use of the pronoun *it*, whether the *variety*, the *colour*, or the *rainbow* itself be the object of consideration. The noun *variety* should have been repeated thus, "and are led to consider the cause of that variety."

NOTE 3.—When there are two antecedents of different persons to which a relative pronoun refers, the relative and verb following, as well as the possessive pronoun, may agree in person with either, though usage may sometimes offer a preference; as, "I am the person *who* love you;" or, "I am the person *who* loves you." "I am the man *who* fight for my country;" or, "I am the man *who* fights for his country." But when one of the antecedents has been preferred, that agreement must be preserved throughout the sentence; as, "I am *he* *who* counsels and advises you well;" not, "*who* counsels and advise you well."

NOTE 4.—When the relative pronouns are used in asking questions, the noun or pronoun containing the answer, must be in the same case as that which contains the question; as, "*Whose* books are these? They are *John's*." "*Who* gave them to him? *We*." "*Of whom* did you buy them? *Of a bookseller*; him *who* lives at the Bible and Crown." "*Whom* did you see there? Both *him* and *the shopman*." The learner will readily comprehend this rule, by supplying the words which are understood in the answers. Thus, to express the answers at large, we should say, "They are *John's* books." "We gave them to *him*." "We bought them of *him* who lives," &c. "We saw both *him* and *the shopman*." As the relative pronoun, when used interrogatively, refers to the subsequent word or phrase containing the answer to the question, that word or phrase may properly be termed the *subsequent* to the interrogative.

NOTE 5.—When a relative pronoun is used in the same sentence with two or more antecedents, and refers only to one of them, to prevent ambiguity, it should be placed as near to that which it is intended to represent, as the construction of the sentence will admit. The following sentences are therefore inaccurate. "There are many people in *China*, *whose* support is derived almost entirely from rice." "He is like a beast of prey, *who* is void of compassion." They should be, "In the empire of *China* there are many people *whose* support," &c. and "He *who* is void of compassion, is like a beast of prey."

NOTE 6.—The pronoun *what* should not be used for the conjunction *that*. The following examples are incorrect in this respect. "He would not believe but *what* I was in fault." "I do not doubt but *what* he did it for the best."

NOTE 7.—When two or more pronouns of different persons are connected by the conjunction *and*, the plural pronoun which refers to them, should agree in person with the first, in preference to the second or third; and with the second, in preference to the third; as, "I, thou, and he, should govern *our* passions;" "Thou and he should govern *your* passions."

NOTE 8.—The relative is generally the nominative case to the verb, when no nominative comes between it and the verb; as, "The master *who* taught us;" "The trees *which* are planted." But when a nominative comes between the relative and the verb, the relative is governed by the verb, or by some other word in the sentence on which it immediately depends; as, "He *who* preserves me, to *whom* I owe my being, *whom* I am, and *whom* I serve, is eternal." When both the antecedent and relative become nominatives, each to different verbs, the relative is nominative to the former, and the antecedent to the latter verb; as, "True *philosophy*, *which* is the ornament of our nature, consists more in the love of our duty and the practice of virtue, than in great talents and extensive knowledge."

A few instances of erroneous construction will illustrate both the branches of the eighth Note. The three following refer to the first part. "How can we avoid being grateful to those *whom*, by repeated kind offices, have proved themselves our real friends?" "These are the men *whom* you might suppose were the authors of the work." "If you were here, you would find three or four *whom* you would say passed their time agreeably." In all these places, *who* should be used instead of *whom*. The remaining examples refer to the second part of the note. "Men of fine talents are not always the persons *who* we should esteem." "The persons *who* you dispute with, are precisely of our opinion." In these sentences *whom* should be used instead of *who*.

NOTE 9.—The pronoun *that* is frequently applied to persons as well as things; but after an adjective in the superlative degree, and after the pronominal adjective *same*, it is generally used in preference to *who* or *which*; as, "Charles XII. king of Sweden, was one of the greatest madmen *that* the world ever saw." "Catiline's followers were the most profligate *that* could be found in any city." "He is the same man *that* we saw before." There are cases wherein we cannot conveniently dispense with the relative *that* as applied to persons: as first, after *who* when used interrogatively; "Who *that* has any sense of religion, would have argued thus?" Secondly, when persons make but a part of the antecedent; "The woman and the estate *that* became his portion, were too much for his moderation." In neither of these examples could any other relative have been used; but there are some instances in which it can hardly be called proper to use *that* instead of *who* or *whom*. Thus, directly after a proper name, as in Hume; "The queen gave orders for taking into custody the duke of Northumberland, who fell on his knees to the earl of Arundel, *that* arrested him." *Who* would have been much better; and even in cases where *that* is as proper as *who*, both never ought to be relatives of the same antecedent in the same sentence. And, indeed, it is very awkward, to say the least of it, to use both in the same sentence, though relating to different antecedents, if all these be names of rational beings. "The lords, *who* made the first report, and the commons, *that* seemed to vie with their lordships," &c.

*That*, as a relative, cannot take the preposition or verb immediately before it; as, "The man *to whom* I gave the book," is a correct expression; but I cannot say, "The man *to that* I gave the book." "Having defeated *whom*, he remained quiet;" but we cannot, in speaking of persons, say, "Having defeated *that*, he remained quiet."

The compound pronouns *whichever*, *whatsoever*, and the like, are elegantly divided by the interposition of the corresponding nouns; thus, "On *whichever*

side the king cast his eyes;" would have sounded better, if written, "On *which* side *soever*," &c.

NOTE 10.—The relative pronoun *who*, is so much appropriated to persons, that there is generally harshness in the application of it, except to the proper names of persons, or to the general terms *man*, *woman*, &c. A term which implies the idea of persons only, and expresses them by some circumstance or epithet, does not always authorize the use of this pronoun; as, "That faction in England *who* most powerfully opposed his arbitrary pretensions;" "That faction *which*," would have been better; and the same remark will serve for the following examples: "France, *who* was in alliance with Sweden;" "The court *who*," &c. "The cities *who* aspired at liberty;" "That party among us *who*," &c.

In some cases it may be doubtful whether the pronoun *who* be properly applied or not; as, "The number of substantial inhabitants with *whom* some cities abound." For when a term directly and necessarily implies persons, it may, in many cases, claim the personal relative; as, "None of the company *whom* he most affected, could cure him of the melancholy under which he laboured." The word *acquaintance* may have the same construction.

We hardly consider little children as persons, because that expression gives us the idea of reason and reflection; and, therefore, the application of the personal relative *who*, in this case, seems to be harsh: "A child *who*." Better to say, "A child *that*."

NOTE 11.—In one case, custom authorizes us to use *which*, with respect to person; and that is, when we want to distinguish one person of two, or a particular person among a number of others. We should then say, "*Which* of the two?" or, "*Which* of them, is he or she?"

NOTE 12.—As the pronoun relative has no distinction of number, we sometimes find an ambiguity in the use of it; as when we say, "The disciples of Christ *whom* we imitate;" we may mean the imitation either of Christ, or of his disciples. The accuracy and clearness of the sentence depend very much upon the proper and determinate use of the relative, so that it may readily present its antecedent to the mind of the learner or reader, without any obscurity or ambiguity.

*What*, has several uses. First, it has the sense of *that which*; as, "I have heard *what* has been alleged." Secondly, *what* stands for any indefinite idea; as, "He cares not *what* he says or does." Thirdly, a principal use of *what* is to ask questions; as, "*What* will be the consequence of the revolution in France?" Fourthly, *what*, as well as *which* and *that*, are frequently used as pronominal adjectives; as, "I know not *what* impressions time may have made upon your person." The word *whose* is not so generally restricted to persons, but that good writers, even in prose, use it when speaking of things. The construction is not, however, generally pleasing, as we may see in the following instances; "Pleasure, *whose* nature," &c. "Call every production *whose* parts, and *whose* natures," &c.

NOTE 13.—The neuter pronoun *it*, is sometimes omitted and understood; thus, we say, "As appears, as follows;" for "As *it* appears, as *it* follows;" and "May be;" for "*It* may be." This neuter pronoun, by an idiom peculiar to the English language, is frequently joined in explanatory sentences, with a noun or pronoun of the masculine or feminine gender; as, "*It* was I;" "*It* was the man or woman that did it."

#### RULE XIV.

Conjunctions connect nouns and pronouns in the same case, and, generally, verbs of the like moods and tenses; as, "He loves *you* and *me*;" "The master taught *her*, and *me* to write;" "*He* and *she* were school-fellows;" "Candour is *to be approved* and *practised*;" "If thou sincerely desire, and earnestly pursue virtue, she will assuredly be found by thee, and prove a rich reward."

NOTE 1.—Two or more nouns, or pronouns, in the singular number, connected by the conjunction *and*, must have verbs, nouns, and pronouns agreeing with them in the plural number; as, "Socrates and Plato were wise;" they were the most eminent philosophers of Greece;" "Thou and he were true to your country."

NOTE 2.—Two or more nouns, or pronouns, in the singular number, connected by *or*, *nor*, must have a verb, noun, and pronoun agreeing with them in the singular number; as, "Peter or John was at the exchange yesterday; but neither Peter nor John is there to-day."

NOTE 3.—When singular pronouns, or a noun and pronoun, of different persons are connected by *or* or *nor*, the verb must agree, in person, with that which is placed next to it; as, "I or thou *art* to blame;" "Thou or I *am* in fault;" "I, or thou, or he, *is* the author of it;" "George or I *am* the person." But it would be better to say; "Either I *am* to blame, or thou *art*," &c.

NOTE 4.—When a disjunctive occurs between a singular noun or pronoun, and a plural one, the verb is made to agree with the plural noun and pronoun; as, "Neither poverty nor riches were injurious to him;" "I or they were offended by it." But in this case, the plural noun or pronoun, when it can conveniently be done, should be placed next to the verb.

NOTE 5.—Conjunctions sometimes connect different moods and tenses of verbs. But in these instances the nominative must generally be repeated; which is not necessary, though it may be done, under the construction to which the fourteenth rule refers. We may say, "He lives temperately, and he should live temperately;" "He may return, but he will not continue;" "She was proud, though she is now humble."

When, in the progress of a sentence, we pass from the affirmative to the negative form, or from the negative to the affirmative, the subject or nominative is generally repeated; as, "He is rich, but he is not respectable."

NOTE 6.—Some conjunctions require the indicative, some the subjunctive mood after them. It is a general rule that, when something contingent or doubtful is implied, the subjunctive ought to be used; as, "If I were to write, he would not regard it;" "He will not be pardoned, unless he repent." But wheu

neither contingency nor doubt is implied, the verb should be in the indicative, whatever conjunctions may attend it; as, "Though he is poor, he is contented;" not, "Though he be poor," &c.

The conjunctions *if, though, unless, except, whether, &c.* generally require the subjunctive mood after them; as, "If thou be afflicted, repine not;" "Though he slay me, yet will I trust in him;" "He cannot be clean, unless he wash himself;" "No power except it were given him from above;" "Whether it were I or they, so we preach." But even these conjunctions, when the sentence does not imply doubt, admit of the indicative; as, "If he allows the excellence of virtue, he does not regard her precepts."

It may not be superfluous to observe, that the auxiliaries of the potential mood, when applied to the subjunctive, do not change the termination of the second person singular. We properly say, "If thou *mayst* or *canst* go;" "Though thou *mightst* live;" "Unless thou *couldst* read;" "If thou *wouldst* learn;" and not, "If thou *may* or *can* go."

NOTE 7.—After the comparatives *than* and *as*, there may be, and generally is, an ellipsis of the verb, noun, or other words; as, "She is taller *than* I;" "He loves his money *more than* his honour;" "Paris is not so large *as* London;" "This is *more afflictive than* was expected;" that is, "Taller *than* I am," &c.

NOTE 8.—Some conjunctions have corresponding conjunctions belonging to them, either expressed or understood; as 1st, *Though, yet, nevertheless*; as, "Though he was rich, yet for our sakes he became poor;" "Though powerful, he was meek." 2d, *Whether—or*; as, "Whether he will go or not, I cannot tell." 3d, *Either—or*; as, "I will either send it, or bring it myself." 4th, *Neither—nor*; as, "Neither he nor I am able to compass it." 5th, *As—as*; expressing a comparison of equality; as, "She is as amiable as her sister, and as much respected." 6th, *As—so*; expressing a comparison of equality; thus, "As the stars, so shall thy seed be." 7th, *As—so*; expressing a comparison of quality; as, "As the one dieth, so dieth the other;" "As he reads, they read." 8th, *So—as*; with a verb expressing a comparison of quality; as, "To see thy glory, so as I have seen thee in the sanctuary." 9th, *So—as*; with a negative and an adjective expressing a comparison of quantity; as, "Pompey was not so great a general as Cesar, nor so great a man." 10th, *So—that*; expressing a consequence; as, "He was so fatigued, that he could scarcely move."

The conjunctions *or* and *nor* may often be used with nearly equal propriety. "The king, whose character was not sufficiently vigorous, *nor* decisive, assented to the measure." In this sentence, *or* would perhaps have been better; but, in general, *nor* seems to repeat the negation in the former part of the sentence, and therefore gives more emphasis to the expression.

The conjunctions *lest* and *that*, following a verb of the imperative mood, require the subjunctive mood after them; as, "Love not sleep; lest thou come to poverty;" "Take heed that thou speak not to Jacob." There seems to be an irregularity in the construction of the following sentence, which should always be avoided in similar cases. "If a man have a hundred sheep, and one of them is gone astray," &c. It should be, "and one of them be gone astray," &c.

NOTE 9.—Conjunctions are often improperly used, both singly and in pairs. The following are examples of this impropriety. "The relations are so uncertain, as that they require a great deal of examination." It should be, "that they require," &c. "There was no man so sanguine who did not apprehend some ill consequences." It ought to be, "so sanguine as not to apprehend," &c. or, "no man, how sanguine soever, who did not," &c. "To trust in him, is no more but to acknowledge his power." "This is no other but the gate of paradise." In both these instances, *but* should be *than*. "We should sufficiently weigh the objects of our hopes; whether they be such as we may reasonably expect from them what they propose," &c. It ought to be, "that we may reasonably," &c. "The duke had not behaved with that propriety as he ought to have done;" "with which he ought." "In the order as they lie in his preface;" it should be, "in order as they lie;" or, "in the order in which they lie." "Such sharp replies that cost him his life;" "as cost him his life." "If he were truly that scarecrow, as he is now commonly painted;" "such a scarecrow," &c. "I wish I could do that justice to his memory to oblige the painters;" &c. "do such justice as to oblige," &c.

#### RULE XV.

A noun or pronoun joined with a participle, and standing independent of the rest of the sentence, is in the nominative case independent; as, "The general being slain, the army was routed;" "Affairs being thus circumstanced, it was advisable not to proceed in the business;" "The parliament having justified the king's conduct, the mob dispersed;" "Jesus had conveyed himself away, a multitude being in that place."

NOTE 1.—Nouns in the nominative case independent, have no connexion, either by government or agreement, with any other part of speech in the sentence in which they are used. But participles, connected with independent nouns, have an agreement with the nouns; and it is frequently the case, that participles in this connexion, may govern an objective case after them; as, "The sun dispersing the clouds, it began to grow warm."

#### RULE XVI.

A verb in the infinitive mood, may be governed by a verb, noun, adjective, or participle; as, "He loves to cherish the social virtues;" "The next thing natural for the mind to do;" "She is worthy to be loved;" "Endeavouring to persuade."

NOTE 1.—*Than* and *as* sometimes appear to govern the infinitive mood; as, "Nothing makes a man suspect much, more than to know little;" "An object so high as to be invisible."

NOTE 2.—The infinitive mood has, in its sense and use, a near affinity to a noun. It is much employed to introduce sentences which are the nominatives to verbs, as well as the objects following them; as, "To play is pleasant;" "Boys love to play." In the first sentence, *to play* is the nominative case; in the second, it is the objective.

NOTE 3.—When several verbs of the infinitive mood are connected by a conjunction, the preposition *to* is, generally, placed before the first verb only, and understood to the rest; as, "It is our duty to fear God and keep his commandments."

NOTE 4.—As the infinitive mood has often the nature of a noun, it should not be used when a noun, pronoun, or participle would be more elegant and expressive; as, "He doubted them to be sincere;" it should be, "He doubted their sincerity."

NOTE 5.—The infinitive mood should never be used with regard to time, as the preposition *to* is prefixed only to verbs in the present and perfect tenses.

#### RULE XVII.

A verb in the infinitive mood absolute, stands independent of the remaining part of the sentence; as, "To confess the truth, I was in fault;" "To proceed in my story, he went to Boston."

*To confess, to proceed*, are verbs in the infinitive mood, and they are used in an absolute sense; that is, they are not governed by any preceding verb, noun, or adjective; neither are they used as doing the office of nominative cases to any subsequent verbs.

NOTE 1.—A verb absolute, in the infinitive mood, may govern an objective word, either expressed, or understood; as, "To confess the truth."

NOTE 2.—The conjunction *for*, is inelegantly used before verbs in the infinitive mood; as, "He came for to study Latin;" "They went for to hear him preach;" "All their works they do for to be seen of men."

NOTE 3.—The infinitive mood of active verbs, is often used in a neuter signification; as, "They are to blame for so doing;" "I left my books to bind." Such infinitives may be expressed, perhaps, with greater propriety, by the infinitive of the passive verbs; as, "They are to be blamed for so doing;" "I left my books to be bound."

#### RULE XVIII.

The verbs which follow *bid, dare, feel, hear, let, make, need, see, &c.* are used in the infinitive mood without having the sign to prefixed to them; as, "He bids me come;" "I dare engage;" "We felt the earth tremble;" "We heard him relate the story;" "Let me see the man;" "We cannot make them understand;" "He need not be anxious;" "I saw him do it." In the above sentences it would be superfluous and improper to add *to*, the sign of the infinitive, to those verbs which are in Italics. Thus, "I saw him to do it."

NOTE 1.—In the uses of *dare* and *need*, there are some peculiarities which deserve remark.

When *dare* signifies to defy or challenge, it is a transitive verb, and is followed by a verb in the infinitive mood with the usual prefix; as, "He dares me to enter the list." But when it is intransitive, denoting to have courage, it is followed by a verb in the infinitive mood without *to*; as, "I dare engage;" and in popular practice it is used in the third person, without the personal termination. Thus, instead of saying, "He dares not do it," we generally say, "He dare not do it." The past and future tenses are generally followed by the infinitive mood with the usual prefix; as, "You have dared to throw more than a suspicion upon mine;" "He will not dare to attack his adversary." In the like manner, *need*, when an active verb, is regular in its inflections; as, "A man needs more prudence." But when intransitive, it drops the personal terminations in the present tense, and is followed by a verb without the prefix *to*; as, "Nobody need be afraid that he will not have scope enough;" "The heeders need be under no fear;" "She need dig no more;" "A man need not be uneasy on these grounds;" "He need not urge to this honourable court."

In the use of this verb, there is another irregularity, which is peculiar, the verb being without a nominative, expressed or implied. Thus we say, "Whereof there needs no account;" "There is no evidence of the fact, and there needs none." This is an established use of *need*. The infinitive mood following the verb *see* (signifying to take care of) should have the sign to expressed; as, "I will see to have it done."

NOTE 2.—A verb in the infinitive mood, should always be written in the present tense, when it expresses an action or event contemporary with its governing verb, or subsequent to it; as, "The last week I intended to write a letter;" "I found him much better than I expected to find him;" "History painters would have found it difficult to invent such a species of being." But when it denotes action or being antecedent to the governing verb, it must be in the perfect tense; as, "It would have afforded me great pleasure, to have been the messenger of such intelligence;" "A free pardon was granted to the son, who was known to have offered indignities to the body of Varus." A common mistake in the use of the infinitive mood is, to use the perfect tense, in cases where the present should be employed; as, "The last week, I intended to have written;" "I found him much better than I expected to have found him." These, and many other like phrases, are improperly used in the perfect tense.

NOTE 3.—When the verb *ought* is used in the present tense, the present tense of the infinitive mood ought to be used; as, "He ought to submit." But when it is used in the imperfect tense, the perfect tense of the infinitive mood should follow it; as, "He ought to have done it."

As the verb *ought* has no variation of ending to distinguish the present and imperfect tenses, the two tenses of the infinitive mood, one of which always follows it, are the only means of distinguishing one from the other.

## DIRECTIONS FOR PARSING.

AS we have finished the explanation of the different parts of speech, and the rules for forming them into sentences, it is now proper to give some examples of the manner in which learners should be exercised, in order to prove their knowledge, and to render it familiar to them. This is called parsing.

The Rules of Syntax have been constructed so as to embrace all the varieties that generally occur in parsing; but as our language is acknowledged to be exceedingly anomalous, the Notes annexed to the Rules are so framed as to include most of the irregularities that occur in composition. Hence, in parsing abstruse sentences, it may be necessary to refer to the Notes.

## SPECIMENS OF SYNTACTICAL PARSING.

"Vice produces misery."

*Vice* is a common noun, neuter gender, third person, singular number, and nominative case to "produces," according to RULE I. which says; (*here repeat the rule.*) *Produces* is an active regular verb, indicative mood, present tense, third person singular, and agrees with its nominative "vice," agreeably to RULE II. *Misery* is a common noun, neuter gender, third person, singular number, objective case, and governed by "produces," according to RULE VI.

"They found him transgressing the laws."

*They* is a personal pronoun, third person, plural number, and nominative case to "found," according to RULE I. *Found* is an active irregular verb, indicative mood, imperfect tense, third person plural, agreeing with its nominative "they," according to RULE II. *Him* is a personal pronoun, masculine gender, third person, singular number, objective case, and governed by "found," agreeably to RULE VI. *Transgressing* is a present participle, and relates to "him," according to RULE IV. *The* is the definite article, and belongs to "laws," according to RULE III. *Laws* is a common noun, neuter gender, third person, plural number, objective case, and governed by "transgressing," according to RULE VII.

"Goodness will be rewarded."

*Goodness* is a common noun, neuter gender, third person, singular number, and nominative case to "will be rewarded," according to RULE I. *Will be rewarded* is a passive regular verb, indicative mood, first future tense, third person singular, and agrees with its nominative "goodness," agreeably to RULE II.

"Time flies, O how swiftly!"

*Time* is a common noun, neuter gender, third person, singular number, and nominative case to "flies," according to RULE I. *Flies* is a neuter irregular verb, indicative mood, present tense, third person singular, agreeing with its nominative "time," agreeably to RULE II. *O* is an interjection. *How* is an adverb, and qualifies "swiftly," according to RULE V. *Swiftly* is an adverb, and qualifies "flies," according to RULE V.

"We should be kind to them, who are unkind to us."

*We* is a personal pronoun, first person, plural number, and nominative case to "should be," according to RULE I. *Should be* is a neuter irregular verb, potential mood, imperfect tense, first person plural, agreeing with its nominative "we," agreeably to RULE II. *Kind* is an adjective, and belongs to "we," according to RULE III. *To* is a preposition. *Them* is a personal pronoun, third person, plural number, objective case, and governed by "to," agreeably to RULE VIII. *Who* is a relative pronoun, and agrees with its antecedent "them," in the third person plural, agreeably to RULE XIII. It is the nominative case to "are," according to RULE I. *Are* is a neuter irregular verb, indicative mood, present tense, third person plural, and agrees with its nominative "who," according to RULE II. *Unkind* is an adjective, in the positive degree, and relates to "who," according to RULE III. *To* is a preposition. *Us* is a personal pronoun, first person, plural number, objective case, and governed by "to," agreeably to RULE VIII.

"This bounty has relieved you and me, and has gratified the donor."

*This* is a pronominal adjective, used as an adjective, and belongs to "bounty," according to RULE III. *Bounty* is a common noun, neuter gender, third person, singular number, and nominative case to "has relieved," according to RULE I. *Has relieved* is an active regular verb, indicative mood, perfect tense, third person singular, agreeing with its nominative "bounty," according to RULE II. *You* is a personal pronoun, second person, plural number, objective case, and governed by "has relieved," according to RULE VI. *And* is a conjunction. *Me* is a personal pronoun, first person, singular number, objective case, connected to "you" by "and," according to RULE XIV. *And* is a conjunction. *Has gratified* is an active regular verb, indicative mood, perfect tense, third person singular, connected to "has relieved" by "and," agreeably to RULE XIV. *The* is the definite article, and belongs to "donor," according to RULE III. *Donor* is a common noun, third person, singular number, objective case, and governed by "gratified," according to RULE VI.

"He will not be pardoned, unless he repent."

*He* is a personal pronoun, masculine gender, third person, singular number, and nominative case to "will be pardoned," according to RULE I. *Will be pardoned* is a passive regular verb, indicative mood, first future tense, third person singular, agreeing with its nominative "he," agreeably to RULE II. *Not* is an adverb, and qualifies "will be pardoned," according to RULE V. *Unless* is a

conjunction. *He* is a personal pronoun, masculine gender, third person, singular number, and nominative case to "repent," according to RULE I. *Repent* is a neuter regular verb, subjunctive mood, present tense, third person singular, agreeing with its nominative "he," agreeably to RULE II.

"The emperor, Marcus Aurelius, was a wise and virtuous prince."

*The* is the definite article, and belongs to "emperor," according to RULE III. *Emperor* is a common noun, masculine gender, third person, singular number, and nominative case to "was," according to RULE I. *Marcus Aurelius* is a proper noun, masculine gender, third person, singular number, nominative case, and put in apposition with "emperor," agreeably to RULE XI. *Was* is a neuter irregular verb, indicative mood, imperfect tense, third person singular, and agrees with its nominative "emperor," according to RULE II. *A* is the indefinite article, relating to "prince," according to RULE III. *Wise* is an adjective, in the positive degree, and belongs to "prince," according to RULE III. *And* is a conjunction. *Virtuous* is an adjective, in the positive degree, and belongs to "prince," according to RULE III. *Prince* is a common noun, masculine gender, third person, singular number, nominative case, after the neuter verb "was," according to RULE IX.

"To confess the truth, General, I was in fault."

*To confess* is an active regular verb, infinitive mood, present tense, and stands independent, agreeably to RULE XVII. *The* is the definite article, and belongs to "truth," according to RULE III. *Truth* is a common noun, neuter gender, third person, singular number, objective case, and governed by "To confess," agreeably to RULE VI. *General* is a common noun, masculine gender, second person, singular number, and in the nominative case independent, according to RULE XII. *I* is a personal pronoun, first person, singular number, nominative case to "was," agreeably to RULE I. *Was* is a neuter irregular verb, indicative mood, imperfect tense, first person singular, agreeing with its nominative "I," according to RULE II. *In* is a preposition, showing the relation between "was," and "fault." *Fault* is a common noun, neuter gender, third person, singular number, objective case, and governed by "in," according to RULE VIII.

"Good works being neglected, devotion is false."

*Good* is an adjective, in the positive state, and belongs to "works," according to RULE III. *Works* is a common noun, neuter gender, third person, plural number, and nominative case independent, according to RULE XV. *Being neglected*, is a compound participle, relating to "works," according to RULE IV. *Devotion* is a common noun, third person, singular number, and nominative case to "is," according to RULE I. *Is* is a neuter irregular verb, indicative mood, present tense, third person singular, and agrees with its nominative "devotion," agreeably to RULE II. *False* is an adjective, and belongs to "devotion," according to RULE III.

"Strive to improve."

*Strive* is a neuter irregular verb, imperative mood, present tense, second person singular, and agrees with its nominative "thou," understood, agreeably to RULE II. *To improve*, is a neuter regular verb, infinitive mood, present tense, and governed by "strive," according to RULE XVI.

"Let me proceed."

*Let* is an active irregular verb, imperative mood, present tense, second person singular, and agrees with its nominative "thou," understood, according to RULE II. *Me* is a personal pronoun, first person, singular number, objective case, and governed by "let," according to RULE VI. *Proceed* is a neuter regular verb, infinitive mood, without having the sign *to* prefixed, because it follows "let," according to RULE XVIII; present tense, and governed by "me," according to RULE XVI.

"Peace and joy are virtue's reward."

*Peace* is a common noun, neuter gender, third person, singular number, and one of the nominatives to "are," according to RULE I. *And* is a copulative conjunction. *Joy* is a common noun, neuter gender, third person, singular number, connected with "peace" by "and," according to RULE XIV. *Are* is a neuter irregular verb, indicative mood, present tense, third person plural, agreeing with its nominative case "peace and joy," agreeably to Note 1, under RULE XIV. *Virtue's* is a common noun, neuter gender, third person, singular number, possessive case, and governed by "reward," according to RULE X. *Reward* is a common noun, neuter gender, third person, singular number, and nominative case after "are," agreeably to RULE IX.

"Wisdom or folly governs us."

*Wisdom* is a common noun, neuter gender, third person, singular number, and nominative case to "governs," according to RULE I. *Or* is a disjunctive conjunction. *Folly* is a common noun, neuter gender, third person, singular number, and nominative case to "governs," according to Note 2, under RULE XIV. *Governs* is an active regular verb, indicative mood, present tense, third person singular, and agrees with its nominative "wisdom" or "folly," according to RULE II. *Us* is a personal pronoun, first person, plural number, objective case, and governed by "governs," according to RULE VI.

"We are not unemployed."

*We* is a personal pronoun, first person, plural number, and nominative case to "are," according to RULE I. *Are* is a neuter irregular verb, indicative mood, present tense, first person plural, agreeing with its nominative "we," according to RULE II. *Not* is an adverb of negation, and qualifies "are," ac



cording to RULE V. *Unemployed* is an adjective, and belongs to "we," according to RULE III.

"Who preserves us?"

*Who* is a relative pronoun of the interrogative kind, and nominative case to "preserves," according to RULE I. The word to which it relates, (its subsequent,) is the noun or pronoun containing the answer to the question, agreeably to Note 4, under RULE XIII. *Preserves* is an active regular verb, indicative mood, present tense, third person singular, agreeing with its nominative "who," agreeably to RULE II. *Us* is a personal pronoun, first person, plural number, objective case, and governed by "preserves," according to RULE VI.

"Whose house is that? My brother's and mine. Who inhabit it? We."

*Whose* is a relative pronoun of the interrogative kind, and relates to the following words, "brother's" and "mine," agreeably to Note 4, under RULE XIII. It is in the possessive case, governed by "house," according to RULE X. *House* is a common noun, neuter gender, third person, singular number, and nominative case to "is," according to RULE I. *Is* is a neuter irregular verb, indicative mood, present tense, third person singular, and agrees with its nominative "house," agreeably to RULE II. *That* is a pronominal adjective, used as a pronoun, third person, singular number, and nominative case after "is," according to RULE IX. *My* is a personal pronoun, first person, singular number, possessive case, governed by "brother's," according to RULE X. *Brother's* is a common noun, masculine gender, third person, singular number, possessive case, governed by "house," understood, according to RULE X. *And* is a conjunction. *Mine* is a personal pronoun, first person, singular number, connected by "and" to "brother's," in the same case, agreeably to RULE XIV. (If *house* were expressed, the pronoun *mine* would be changed into *my*.) *Who* is a relative pronoun of the interrogative kind, third person, plural number, nominative case, and relates to "we" following, according to Note 4, under RULE XIII. *Inhabit* is an active regular verb, indicative mood, present tense, third person plural, and agrees with its nominative "who," according to RULE II. *It* is a personal pronoun, neuter gender, third person, singular number, objective case, and governed by "inhabit," according to RULE VI. *We* is a personal pronoun, first person, plural number, and nominative case to the verb "inhabit," understood, according to RULE I. (*We inhabit it*.)

"To err is human."

*To err*, is a verb in the infinitive mood, and the nominative case to "is," according to Note 1, under RULE I. *Is* is a neuter irregular verb, indicative mood, present tense, third person singular, agreeing with its nominative "to err," according to RULE II. *Human* is an adjective, and belongs to "to err," according to Note 5, under RULE III.

"Living expensively and luxuriously, destroys health. By living frugally and temperately, health is preserved."

*Living expensively and luxuriously*, is the nominative case to the verb "destroys." *Living frugally and temperately*, is the objective case, governed by the preposition "by."

## REMARKS ON THE ELLIPSIS.

Ellipsis, when applied to grammar, is the elegant omission of some one part, or parts of speech, in a sentence.

The part of speech that is omitted, must be added in idea, either to complete the sense, or to parse the sentence grammatically.

To shun the unpleasant repetition of words, and to render the mode of expression as elegant as possible, is the main design of the ellipsis.

That this figure may be used with elegance, the speaker, or writer, should be careful to shun all ambiguity of expression. Whenever the meaning is obscured, the figure is improperly used.

Simple sentences are seldom elliptical: but compound sentences are very often affected with this figure.

To produce some examples of elliptical sentences, is the best method to impress the understanding with the propriety, or impropriety, of using the ellipsis.

### Ellipsis of the Article.

"The men, women, and children; together with the cattle, houses, barns, and fields, were all destroyed."

The repetition of the article *the*, before each noun, in this sentence, is needless.

When any peculiar emphasis is to be placed upon the nouns, then the repetition of the article *the* is both necessary and elegant.

"But of that day, and that hour, knoweth no man; no, not the angels, which are in heaven, neither the Son, but the Father."

### Ellipsis of the Noun.

"A most kind, tender, and faithful husband." "A most beautiful, amiable, prudent, and virtuous wife."

Sentences that are very emphatical, will not admit the ellipsis.

"Christ, the power of God, and the wisdom of God." *Christ, the power and wisdom of God*, is not so emphatical.

"He went to St. Stephen's." "He is dean of St. Paul's." "Whose book is this?" "It is Peter's." This is good composition; and more elegant, than if the nouns, omitted by the ellipsis, were supplied. And, yet, in parsing, we must say, St. Stephen's Chapel; St. Paul's Church; It is Peter's book.

### Ellipsis of the Adjective.

"Washington was a great scholar, statesman, and general."

In sentences of this kind, care should be taken, that the adjectives omitted, be as proper to qualify the latter, as the former noun.

The ellipsis of adjectives should never be applied to nouns of different numbers.

### Ellipsis of the Pronoun.

"My house and tenements to Ned." "My book, pen, ink, and paper." "My father and mother, sisters and brothers."

If the expressions demand a particular emphasis, we must dispense with the figure. "O, send out thy light and thy truth." "The Lord is my light and my salvation."

### Ellipsis of the Verb.

"And knowest not that thou art wretched, and miserable, and poor, and blind, and naked."

To omit verbs, in similar instances, is very proper. In the preceding sentences, the conjunction *that*, the pronoun *thou*, and the verb *art*, are omitted in four different places; and yet there is no obscurity of sense.

When several verbs, in succession, are used in the infinitive mood, elegance requires that *to*, the sign of the infinitive mood, should be omitted before all, but the first.

"To love and fear God is man's duty."

### Ellipsis of the Adverb.

"He walks, speaks, and behaves, very genteelly." "He teaches his scholars to spell, read, and write, correctly."

### Ellipsis of the Conjunction.

"God is to be loved for his truth, goodness, mercy, and grace."

In all emphatical expressions, the conjunction ought to be used.

"For I am persuaded, that neither death, nor life, nor angels, nor principalities, nor powers, nor things present, nor things to come, nor height, nor depth, nor any other creature, shall be able to separate us from the love of God."

Corresponding conjunctions should never be omitted: A few examples will evince the impropriety of their omission.

So—as. Providence is not so large as Boston. Providence is not more large so Boston.

As—as. He is as learned a man as you. He is so learned a man as you.

Whether—or. Whether it were you, or they, that played. Whether it were you, nor they, that played.

Neither—nor. Neither this man, nor his father. Neither this man, or his father.

Either—or. Choose either this, or that. Choose either this, and that.

Though—yet. Though he is not polite, yet he is learned and virtuous. Though he is not polite, he is learned and virtuous.

So—that. It is so plain, that you must know it. It is so plain, you must know it.

### Ellipsis of the Preposition.

"To finish his education, he made a tour through England, France, Italy, Germany, and Holland."

The repetition of the preposition *through*, before all these nouns, would be inelegant: And where neither sense nor perspicuity demands the use of a preposition, it should be avoided.

### Ellipsis of the Interjection.

"Thomas answered and said, my Lord and my God. Rabbi good master. Yes, Sir. No, Madam."

The following quotations are very elliptical. "Let us swallow them up alive as the grave, and whole as those that go down into the pit." Supplied: Let thou us swallow them up alive as the grave swalloweth them up alive, and let thou us swallow them up whole, as those are swallowed up whole, that go down into the pit.

That the above verse cannot be parsed without supplying, in idea, the words that are omitted, by the ellipsis, is evident to all acquainted with the rules of Syntax.

"That we may enjoy ourselves, let us be temperate, chaste, moderate; that we may enjoy one another, let us be benevolent, humane, charitable; that we may enjoy God, let us be pious, devout, and holy; detesting the vices, and despising the vanities of this world."

That we may enjoy ourselves, let us be temperate, that we may enjoy ourselves, let us be chaste, and that we may enjoy ourselves, let us be moderate; that we may enjoy one another, let us be benevolent, that we may enjoy one another, let us be humane, and that we may enjoy one another, let us be charitable; that we may enjoy God, let us be pious, that we may enjoy God, let us be devout, and that we may enjoy God, let us be holy; detesting the vices, and despising the vanities of this world.

That the use of the grammatical ellipsis, under certain circumstances, is necessary as well as elegant, appears by this antithesis. The repetition of the words in *Italic*, obscures, in a measure, the sense; lessens the majesty of expression; and greatly fatigues the mind.



## PROSODY.

**PROSODY** consists of two parts; the former teaches the true pronunciation of words, comprising *Accent*, *Quantity*, *Emphasis*, *Pause*, and *Tone*; and the latter, the laws of *Versification*.

**Accent.**—Accent is the laying of a peculiar stress of the voice on a certain letter or syllable in a word, that it may be better heard than the rest, or distinguished from them; as, in the word *presume*, the stress of the voice must be on the letter *u*, and second syllable, *súme*, which takes the accent.

**Quantity.**—The quantity of a syllable is that time which is occupied in pronouncing it. It is considered as long or short.

A vowel or syllable is long, when the accent is on the vowel; which occasions it to be slowly joined, in pronunciation, to the following letter; as, "Fáll, bále, móod, hóuse, féature."

A syllable is short, when the accent is on the consonant; which occasions the vowel to be quickly joined to the succeeding letter; as, "ánt, bônnet, húngér."

A long syllable requires double the time of a short one in pronouncing it: Thus, "Máte" and "Nôte" should be pronounced as slowly again, as "Mât" and "Nót."

**Emphasis.**—By emphasis is meant a stronger and fuller sound of voice, by which we distinguish some word or words on which we design to lay particular stress, and to show how they affect the rest of the sentence. Sometimes the emphatic words must be distinguished by a particular tone of voice, as well as by a greater stress.

**Pauses.**—Pauses or rests, in speaking and reading, are a total cessation of the voice, during a perceptible, and, in many cases, a measurable space of time.

**Tones.**—Tones are different both from emphasis and pauses; consisting in the modulation of the voice, and in the notes or variations of sound which we employ in the expression of our sentiments.

**Versification.**—Versification is the arrangement of a certain number and variety of syllables, according to certain laws. (See Appendix.)

Rhyme is the correspondence of the last sound of one verse, to the last sound of another.

## PUNCTUATION.

**PUNCTUATION** is the art of dividing written composition into sentences and parts of sentences by points or stops, in order to mark the different pauses which the sense and an accurate pronunciation require.

In order to determine the proper application of the points, it is necessary to understand what is meant by an *adjunct* or *imperfect phrase*, a *simple sentence*, and a *compound sentence*.

An adjunct or imperfect phrase contains no assertion, or does not amount to a proposition; as, "Therefore, desirous of praise;" "In the pursuit of riches."

A simple sentence contains one subject or nominative case, and one finite verb,\* expressed or understood; as, "Exercise promotes health."

A compound sentence contains more than one subject and one finite verb, expressed or implied; as, "Examine well the counsel that favours your desires."

The subject and verb may both be attended with adjuncts, expressing the object, cause, end, time, place, manner, and the like.

A sentence is rendered compound, not only by means of a plurality of subjects and verbs, but also of adjuncts.

If two or more adjuncts are connected with the verb in the same manner, by the same preposition, conjunction, &c. the sentence is compound, and may be resolved into two or more simple ones. But if the adjuncts are connected with the verb in a different manner, the sentence is simple; as, "They have sacrificed their health and fortune at the shrine of vanity, pride, and extravagance;" "Elegance of taste has a connexion with many virtues of the most amiable kind."

In the former example, several of the adjuncts being connected with the verb in the same manner, the sentence is compound; in the latter, all the adjuncts being connected with the verb in a different manner, the sentence is simple.

### RULE I.

The members of a simple sentence must not be separated by a comma; as, "Adversity borrows its sharpest sting from our impatience."

### EXCEPTIONS.

1. An adjunct of importance not standing in its natural order; especially an adjunct of the verb, if it come before the subject, between the subject and verb, or between the verb and its object, may often be separated by a comma on both sides; as, "Nor, even on this affecting event, should I presume thus to deviate,"

\* A verb not in the infinitive mood.

&c. "Within the last fifteen years, that Honourable Body has lost a large proportion of its members." "That Honourable Body, within the last fifteen years, has lost," &c. or, "That Honourable Body has lost, within the last fifteen years, a large proportion," &c.

2. The nominative case independent, when an address is made, and nouns in apposition, when attended with adjuncts, must be separated by commas, as, "Do, Trim, said my uncle Toby." "Death, thou king of terrors, choose a prime minister."

3. The nominative case independent, and infinitive mood absolute, with their adjuncts; an adjective or participle with words depending on them; and, generally, any imperfect phrase which may be resolved into a simple sentence, must be separated by a comma; as, "His father dying, he succeeded to the estate." "To confess the truth, I was in fault." "Who, having finished the usual academic course, have returned to us again, to prosecute your professional studies."

4. Where the verb of a simple sentence is understood, a comma may, generally, be inserted; as, "From law arises security; from security, curiosity; from curiosity, knowledge."

### RULE II.

A compound sentence must be resolved into simple ones, and separated by commas; as, "The decay, the waste, and the dissolution of a plant, may affect our spirits, and suggest a train of serious reflections."

### EXCEPTIONS.

1. Two words of the same kind, immediately connected by a conjunction, though they may render the sentence a compound one, must not be separated. But, if there be more than two, they must all be separated, unless connected in pairs, in which case the pairs only must be separated; as, "Some men sin deliberately and presumptuously." "Deaths of parents, friends, and companions, are doubtless intended for our improvement." "There is a natural difference between merit and demerit, virtue and vice, wisdom and folly."

2. In comparative sentences, where the members are short, the comma is better omitted; as, "Wisdom is better than riches." "No preacher is so successful as time."

3. Sentences connected by *what* cannot be separated; and where the relative is understood, the comma is generally omitted; as, "Eat what is set before you." "With sorrow may they mingle gratitude for the wise counsel he has given them, and for the excellent example he has set before them for imitation." "Value duly the opportunities you enjoy."

4. When a simple sentence stands as the object of a preceding verb, and its verb may be changed into the infinitive mood, the comma may be omitted; as, "When I supposed he was at rest;" changed, "when I supposed him to be at rest."

### RULE III.

When a longer pause than a comma is required, and yet the sense is incomplete, a semicolon may be used; as, "The wise man is happy, when he gains his own approbation; the fool, when he gains the applause of those about him."

### RULE IV.

The colon is used when the sense of the division of a period is complete, so as to admit of a full point, but something is added by way of illustration; as, "A brute arrives at a point of perfection that he can never pass: in a few years he has all the endowments he is capable of; and were he to live ten thousand more, would be the same thing he is at present."

**NOTE.**—This point is of little use; the difference between the colon and semicolon is so small, that the two pauses are frequently confounded, as may be seen by the present version of the Proverbs. We conceive the colon might be rejected without injury to the perspicuity of sentences; and punctuation very much simplified by substituting the semicolon and the full point.

### RULE V.

A sentence making in itself complete sense, requires a period after it; as, "Fear God." "Honour the King."

The period is used also after initials when used alone; as after A. D. for Anno Domini; Q. for question; and after abbreviations; as, Col. for Colonel; Mr. for Mister; &c. for *and so forth*, or *et cetera*.

### RULE VI.

Interrogative sentences require a mark of interrogation; and sentences expressing wonder or surprise, a mark of admiration after them; as, "Whom do you see?" "How wonderful is man!"

The following characters are also frequently used in composition.

The dash [—] marks a break in the sentence, or an abrupt turn; as, "If thou art he—but Oh! how fallen! how degraded!"

"Here lies the great—false marble, where?  
Nothing but sordid dust lies here."

It is also used when a long pause is necessary, and a person is waiting for an answer; as, "Hold up thy hand, make signal of thy hope—He dies, and makes no sign!"

Parentheses ( ) include a remark or clause, not essential to the sentence in construction, but useful in explaining it, or introducing an important idea. They mark a moderate pause, and the clause included is read with a depressed tone of voice; as,

"Know then this truth, (enough for man to know),  
Virtue alone is happiness below."

Brackets or Hooks [ ] include words that serve to explain a foregoing word or sentence; as, "He [John]" &c. "They [the Americans]" &c. "This event took place in 1736, [1763, probably an error of the press,] when the enemy," &c.

The mark to distinguish a long syllable, is this ~, as, "Rösy;" and a short one thus ¨; as, "Föly." The Accent is marked thus ´; as, "Fan'cy."

The caret [^] denotes an interlineation, and shows where to bring in what was omitted in the first writing; as,

a but  
^ ^  
"Without friend the world is a wilderness."

The hyphen [-] is used to join compound words together; as, Sea-water, lap-dog, tea-pot, &c. but its chief use is to join the parts of words together that are written partly in one line and partly in another; as, "The words in this case must be divided according to the most approved rules of good pronunciation."

The apostrophe ['] is a sign of the possessive case; as, "Peter's cane." It also contracts words; as, Lov'd for loved, e'en for even, 'tis for it is, &c.

The quotation [" "] or ['] includes a passage that is taken from some other author in his own words. Where a quotation occurs within a quotation, its commencement must be marked by a single inverted comma, and its conclusion by a single apostrophe; as, "When Antisthenes was asked, what learning was the most necessary, he replied, 'To unlearn that which is naught.'"

The ellipsis [—] is used when some letters in a word, or some words in a sentence are omitted; as, K—g, for King.

The brace { } unites three poetical lines which have the same rhyme, or connects a number of words in prose with one common term.

The section [§] divides a discourse or chapter in less parts.

The paragraph [¶] is chiefly used in the Bible, and denotes the beginning of a new subject.

The index or hand [☞] points out a remarkable passage, or something that requires particular attention.

The asterisk or star [\*] directs the reader to some note in the margin or bottom of the page.

Two or more asterisks generally denote that something is wanting, defective, or immodest, in the passage.

The obelisk or dagger, [†] double obelisk or dagger, [‡] parallel lines, [||] letters of the alphabet, and figures, are used as references to the margin, or bottom of the page.

## DIRECTIONS RESPECTING THE USE OF CAPITAL LETTERS.

CAPITALS are used in the following situations.

1. At the beginning of every principal word in the titles of books, chapters, &c. as, "Johnson's Dictionary of the English Language; Rollin's Ancient History."

2. The first word of every book, chapter, letter, note, or any other piece of writing.

3. The beginning of the first word after a period; and if the two sentences are totally independent, after a note of interrogation or exclamation. But, if a number of interrogative or exclamatory sentences are thrown into one general group; or, if the construction of the latter sentence depends on the former, all of them except the first, may begin with small letters; as, "How long, ye simple ones, will ye love simplicity? and the scornors delight in their scorning? and fools hate knowledge?" "Alas! how different! yet how like the same!"

4. The first word of a quotation, introduced after a colon or semicolon, or when it is in a direct form; as, "Always remember this maxim; 'Know thyself.'" But when a quotation is brought in obliquely after a comma, a capital is unnecessary; as, "Solomon observes, 'that pride goes before destruction.'" The first word of an example may also very properly begin with a capital; as, "Temptation proves our virtue."

5. The pronoun I, and the interjection O, must always be capitals; as, "I write; Hear, O earth."

6. At the beginning of every line in poetry.

7. All names, epithets, or qualities of our Creator, are always begun, if not wholly written, with capitals; as, God, LORD, Supreme Being, Almighty, Most High, Divine Providence. The word heaven must always begin with a capital, when used as the name of the King of heaven; as, "May Heaven prosper you." But when it is used as the name of the abode of the blessed, it may begin with a small letter, except at the beginning of a sentence; as, "The angels of heaven." "The Lord of heaven and earth."

8. All proper names, of whatever description, must begin with capitals; of persons, heathen gods and goddesses, brutes, the planets,\* the fixed stars and constellations, countries, kingdoms, states, cities, towns, streets, islands, mountains, rivers, ships, seas, oceans, &c. as, Benjamin Franklin; Sir Isaac Newton; the Allegany Mountains; the Ohio River; Lake Superior; the Red Sea; the Frigate Guerriere. Also all adjectives derived from proper names; as, the Newtonian System; Grecian, Roman, American, French, Italian, &c.

9. All titles of honour, professions, and callings of men, particularly when an address is made, ought to begin with capitals; as, President, Governor, General, Judge, Esquire, Mr. &c. Also all qualities used as titles of men; as, Honourable, Reverend, &c.

10. Capitals are always used to begin the names of all courts, societies, and public bodies of men; as, Congress, the General Assembly, the Supreme Judicial Court, the Court of Common Pleas, the Humane Society, the Corporation, &c.

11. The names of all religious sects and denominations, are begun with capitals; as, Episcopalians, Baptists, Friends, &c.

12. Capitals are always used to begin the names of months, and the days of the week; as, January, February, &c. Monday, Tuesday, &c. Also all public days; as, a Public Thanksgiving, a Solemn Fast, &c.

13. The names of all articles of commerce, when entered in merchants' books, advertisements, &c. should begin with capitals; as, Linen, Cotton, Silk, Rum, Sugar, Tea, &c. Also all sums of money specified in notes, bonds, &c. as, Ten Dollars, and Seventy-five Cents.

14. Very emphatical words are frequently begun, and sometimes wholly written in capitals.

\* The earth excepted.

## EXERCISES IN PUNCTUATION.

### COMMA.

THE tutor by instruction and discipline lays the foundation of the pupil's future honour.

Self-conceit presumption and obstinacy blast the prospect of many a youth.

Deliberate slowly execute promptly.

To live soberly righteously and piously comprehends the whole of our duty.

The path of piety and virtue pursued with a firm and constant spirit will assuredly lead to happiness.

Continue my dear child to make virtue thy principal study.

Peace of mind being secured we may smile at misfortunes.

He who is a stranger to industry may possess but he cannot enjoy.

Beware of those rash and dangerous connexions which may afterwards load thee with dishonour.

### SEMICOLON.

The path of truth is a plain and a safe path that of falsehood is a perplexing maze.

Modesty is one of the chief ornaments of youth and has ever been esteemed a preface of rising merit.

Heaven is the region of gentleness and friendship hell of fierceness and animosity.

### COLON.

Often is the smile of gaiety assumed whilst the heart aches within though folly may laugh guilt will sting.

There is no mortal truly wise and restless at the same time wisdom is the repose of minds.

### PERIOD.

We ruin the happiness of life when we attempt to raise it too high a tolerable and comfortable state is all that we can propose to ourselves on earth peace and contentment not bliss nor transport are the full portion of man perfect joy is reserved for heaven

### INTERROGATION AND EXCLAMATION.

To lie down on the pillow after a day spent in temperance in beneficence and in piety how sweet it is

We wait till to-morrow to be happy alas why not to-day shall we be younger are we sure we shall be healthier will our passions become feebler and our love of the world less

# FALSE GRAMMAR, ADAPTED TO THE RULES OF ORTHOGRAPHY.

## RULE I.

It is no great merit to spel properly; but a great defect to do it incorrectly.—Jacob worshipped his Creator, leaning on the top of his staf.—We may place too little, as well as too much stres upon dreams.—Our manners should be neither gros, nor excessively refined.

## RULE II.

A carr signifies a chariot of war, or a small carriage of burden.—In the names of druggs and plants, the mistake in a word may endanger life.

Nor undelightful is the ceaseless humm  
To him who muses through the woods at noon.

The finn of a fish is the limb by which he balances his body, and moves in the water.—Many a trapp is laid to insnare the feet of youth.—Many thousand families are supported by the simple business of making matts.

## RULE III.

We should subject our fancies to the government of reason.—If thou art seeking for the living amongst the dead, thou wearyest thyself in vain.—If we have denied ourselves sinful pleasures, we shall be great gainers in the end.—We shall not be the happier for possessing talents and affluence, unless we make a right use of them.—The truly good mind is not dismaied by poverty, afflictions, or death.

## RULE IV.

It is a great blessing to have a sound mind, uninfluenced by fancyful humours.—Common calamities, and common blessings, fall heavily upon the envious.—The comeliness of youth are modesty and frankness; of age, condescension and dignity.—When we act against conscience, we become the destroyers of our own peace.—We may be plaiful, and yet innocent; grave, and yet corrupt. It is only from general conduct, that our true character can be portraied.

## RULE V.

When we bring the lawmaker into contempt, we have in effect anuled his laws.—By defering our repentance, we accumulate our sorrows.—The pupils of a certain ancient philosopher, were not, during their first years of study, permitted to ask any questions.—We have all many failings and lapses to lament and recover.—There is no affliction with which we are visitted, that may not be improved to our advantage.—The Christian Lawgiver has prohibited many things, which the heathen philosophers allowed.

## RULE VI.

Restlessness of mind disqualifies us, both for the enjoyment of peace, and the performance of our duty.—The arrows of calumny fall harmlesly at the feet of virtue.—The road to the blisful regions, is as open to the peasant as the king.—A chillness or shivering of the body generally precedes a fever.—To recommend virtue to others, our lights must shine brightly, not dully.

The silent stranger stood amaz'd to see  
Contempt of wealth, and willful poverty.

## RULE VII.

The warmth of disputation, destroys that sedatness of mind which is necessary to discover truth.

All these with ceasless praise his works behold,  
Both day and night.

In all our reasonings, our minds should be sincerely employed in the pursuit of truth.—Rude behaviour, and indecent language, are peculiarly disgracful to youth of education.—The true worship of God is an important and awful service.—Wisdom alone is truly fair: folly only appears so.

## RULE VIII.

The study of the English language is making daily advancement.—A judicious arrangement of studies facilitates improvement.

To shun allurments is not hard,  
To minds resolv'd, forewarn'd, and well prepar'd.

## RULE IX.

Every person and thing connected with self, is apt to appear good and desirable in our eyes.—Errors and misconduct are more excuseable in ignorant, than in well-instructed persons.—The divine laws are not reverseible by those of men.—Gratitude is a forceible and active principle in good and generous minds.—Our natural and involuntary defects of body, are not charginable upon us.—We are made to be servicable to others, as well as to ourselves.

F

## RULE X.

An obligeing and humble disposition, is totally unconnected with a servile and cringeing humour.—By solaceing the sorrows of others, the heart is improved at the same time that our duty is performed.—Labour and expense are lost upon a droneish spirit.—The inadvertencies of youth may be excused, but knaveish tricks should meet with severe reproof.

## RULE XI.

Love worketh no ill to our neighbour, and is the fulfilling of the law.—That which is sometimes expedient, is not allways so.—We may be hurtfull to others, by our example, as well as by personal injuries.—Where diligence opens the door of the understanding, and impartiality keeps it, truth finds an entrance and a wellcome too.

## PROMISCUOUS EXAMPLES.

Neglect no oppurtunity of doing good.  
No man can stedily build upon accidents.

How shall we keep, what sleeping or awake,  
A weaker may surprize, a stronger take.

Neither time nor misfortunes should erase the remembrance of a friend.—Moderation should preside, both in the kitchen and the parlor.—Shall we recieve good at the Divine hand, and shall we not recieve evil?—In many designs, we may succede and be miserable.—We should have sence and virtue enough to recede from our demands, when they appear to be unreasonable.—All our comforts procede from the Father of Goodness.—The ruin of a state is generally preceded by a universal degeneracy of manners, and a contempt of religion.—His father omited nothing in his education, that might render him virtuous and usefull.—The daw in the fable was dressed in pilfered ornaments.—A favor conferred with delicacy, doubles the obligation.—They tempted their Creator, and limited the Holy One of Izrael.—The precepts of a good education have often recured in the time of need.—We are frequently benefitted by what we have dreaded.—It is no great virtue to live lovingly with good-natured and meek persons.—The Christian religion gives a more lovly character of God, than any religion ever did.—Without sinisterous views, they are dextrous managers of their own interest. Any thing committed to the trust and care of another, is a deposit.

Here finnish'd he, and all that he had made  
Vieu'd and beheld! All was intirely good.

It deserves our best skill to enquire into those rules, by which we may guide our judgement.—Food, clotheing, and habitations, are the rewards of industry.—If we lie no restraint upon our lusts, no controul upon our appetites and passions, they will hurry us into guilt and misery.—An independant is one who, in religious affairs, holds that every congregation is a compleat Church.

Receive his council and securly move:  
Entrust thy fortune to the Power above.

Following life in cretures we disect,  
We loose it in the moment we detect.

The acknowledgement of our transgressions must precede the forgivness of them.—Judicious abridgements often aid the study of youth.

Examine how thy humor is enclin'd,  
And which the ruleing passion of thy mind.

—He faulters at the question:  
His fears, his words, his looks, declare him guilty.

Calicoe is an Indian stuff made of cotton; sometimes stained with lively colors.—To promote iniquity in others, is nearly the same as being the actors of it ourself.—The glasier's business was unknown to the antients.—The antecedant, in grammer, is the noun to which the relative refers.—Be not afraid of the wicked: they are under the controul of Providence. Consciousness of guilt may justly afright us.—Convey to others no intelligence which you would be ashamed to avow.—Many are weighed in the ballance, and found wanting.—How many disapointments have, in their consequences, saved a man from ruin!—A well-poised mind makes a chearful countenance.—A certain housholder planted a vinyard, but the men employed in it made ungratefull returns.—Let us show dilligence in every laudible undertaking.—Cinamon is the fragrant bark of a low tree in the iland of Ceylon.—A ram will but with his head, though he be brought up tame, and never saw the action.—We percieve a piece of silver in a bason, when water is poured on it, though we could not discover it before.—Virtue imbalms the memory of the good.—The king of Great Britain is a limited monarch; and the British nation a free people.—The phisician may dispence the medicin, but Providence alone can bless it.—In many persuits, we imbarck with pleasure, and laua sorrowfully.—Rocks,



mountains, and caverns, are of indispensable use, both to the earth and to man.—The hive of a city, or kingdom, is in the best condition, when their is the least noise or buz in it.—The roughnesses found on our entrance into the paths of virtue and learning, grow smoother as we advance.—That which was once the most beautiful spot of Italy, covered with palaces, embellished by princes, and celebrated by poets, has now nothing to show but ruins.—Battering rams were antiently used to beat down the walls of a city.—Jocky signifies a man that rides horses in a race; or who deals in horses.—The harmlessness of many animals, and the enjoyment which they have of life, should plead for them against cruel usage.—We may be very busy, to no usefull purpose.—We cannot plead in abatement of our guilt, that we are ignorant of our duty.—Genuine charity, how liberal soever it may be, will never impoverish ourselves. If we sew sparingly, we shall reap accordingly.—However disagreeable, we must resolutely perform our duty.—A fit of sickness is often a kind chastisement and disciplin, to moderate our affection for the things of this life.—It is a happiness to young persons, when they are preserved from the snares of the world, as in a garden inclosed.—Health and peace, the most valuable possessions, are obtained at small expence.—Incense signifies perfumes exhaled by fire, and made use of in religious ceremonies.—True happiness is an enemy to pomp and noise.—Few relaxions are more distressing, than those which we make on our own ingratitude.—There is an inseparable connection between piety and virtue.—Many actions have a fair complexion, which have not sprung from virtue.—Which way soever we turn ourselves, we are encountered with sensible demonstrations of a Deity.—If we forsake the ways of virtue, we cannot alledge any color of ignorance, or want of instruction.—There are more cultivators of the earth, than of their own hearts.—Man is incompassed with dangers innumerable.—War is attended with distressful and desolating effects. It is confesedly the scourge of our angry passions.—The earth is the Lord's, and the fullness thereof.—The harvest truly is plenteous, but the laborers are few.—The greater our incitements to evil, the greater will be our victory and reward.—We should not incourage persons to do what they beleive to be wrong.—Virtue is placed between two extremes, which are on both sides equally blameable.—We should continually have the gaol in our eyes, which would direct us in the race.—The goals were forced open, and the prisoners set free.—It cannot be said that we are charitable donors, when our gifts proceed from selfish motives.—Straight is the gate, and narrow the way, that lead to life eternal.—Integrity leads us strait forward, disdaining all doubleings, and crooked paths.—Licentiousness and crimes pave the way to ruin.—Words are the countres of wise men, but the money of fools.—Recompence to no man evil for evil.—He was an excellent person; a mirrour of antient faith in early youth.—Meekness controuls our angry passions; candor, our severe judgments.—He is not only a descendent from pious ancestors, but an inheriter too of their virtues.—An idle person spends his time, and eats the fruits of the earth, like a vermin or a wolf.—Faithfulness and judgment are peculiarly requisit in testamentary executors.—To be faithfull among the faithless, argues great strength of principal.—Mountains appear to be like so many wens or unnatural protuberancies on the face of the earth.—In some places the sea inroads upon the land; in others, the land upon the sea.—Philosophers agreed in despizing riches, as the encumbrances of life.—Wars are regulated robberies and pyracies.—Fishes encrease more than beasts or birds, as appears from their numerous spawn.—The pyramids of Egypt have stood more than three thousand years.—Precepts have small influence, when not inforced by example.

How has kind Heav'n adorn'd the happy land,  
And scatter'd blessings with a wastful hand.

A friend exaggerates a man's virtues, an enemy enflames his crimes.—A witty and humourous vein has often produced enemies.—Neither pleasure nor buisness should ingross our time and affections; proper seasons should be allotted for retirement.—It is laudable to enquire before we determin.—Many have been visited with afflictions, who have not profitted by them.—We may be successful, and yet disappointed.—The experience of want inhances the value of plenty.—To maintain opinions stiffly, is no evidence of their truth, or of our moderation.—Horehound has been famous for its medecinal qualities; but it is now little used.—The wicked are often ensnared in the trap which they lie for others.—It is hard to say what diseases are cureable: they are all under the guidance of heaven.—Instructors should not only be skillfull in those sciences which they teach; but have skill in the method of teaching, and patience in the practise.—Science strengthens and enlarges the minds of men.—A steady mind may receive council; but there is no hold on a chaugable humour.—We may enure ourselves by custom, to bear the extremities of whether without injury.—Excessive merrymint is the parent of greif.—Air is sensible to the touch by its motion, and by its resistance to bodies moved in it.—A polite address is sometimes the cloke of malice.—To practice virtue is the sure way to love it.—Many things are plausible in theory, which fail in practise.—Learning and knowledge must be attained by slow degrees, and are the reward only of dilligence and patience.—We should study to live peaceably with all men.

A soul that can securely death defy,  
And count it nature's privilege to die.

Whatever promotes the interest of the soul, is also condusive to our present felicity.—Let not the sternness of virtue afright us; she will soon become aimable.

The spacious firmament on high,  
With all the blue etheriel sky,

And spangled heav'ns, a shining frame,  
Their great original proclame.

Passion is the drunkenness of the mind; it supercedes the workings of reason.—If we are sincere, we may be assured of an advocate to intercede for us.—We ought not to consider the encrease of another's reputation, as a diminution of our own.—The reumatism is a painful distemper, supposed to procede from acrid humors.—The beautiful and accomplished, are too apt to study behaviour rather than virtue.—The peazant's cabin contains as much content as the sovereign's pallace.—True valor protects the feeble, and humbles the oppressor.—David the son of Jesse, was a wise and valient man.—Prophecies and miracles proclaimed Jesus Christ to be the Savior of the world.—Esau sold his birthright for a savory mess of pottage.—A regular and virteous education, is an inestemable blessing.

Honor and shame from no condition rise;  
Act well your part; there all the honor lies.

The rigor of monkish disciplin often conceals great depravity of heart.—We should recollect, that however favorable we may be to ourselves, we are rigorously examined by others.—Virtue can render youth, as well as old age, honorable.—Rumor often tells false tales.—Weak minds are rufled by trifling things.—The cabage-tree is very common in the Caribbee ilands, where it grows to a prodigious height.—Visit the sick, feed the hungry, cloath the naked.—His smiles and tears are too artificial to be relied on.—The most essensial virtues of a Christian, are love to God and benevolence to man.—We should be chearful without levity.—A calender signifies a register of the year, and a calendar, a press in which clothiers smooth their cloth.—Integrity and hope are the sure softners of sorrow.—Camomile is an odouriferous plant, and possesses considerable medicinel virtues.—The gaiety of youth should be tempered by the precepts of age.—Certainty, even on distressful occasions, is sometimes more eligible than suspence.

Still green with bays each antient alter stands,  
Above the reach of sacriligious hands.

The most acceptable sacrifice is that of a contrite and humble heart.—We are accountable for whatever we patronize in others.—It marks a savage disposition, to tortur animals, to make them smart and agonise for our diversion.—The edge of cloath, where it is closed by complicating the threads, is called the selvidge.—Soushong tea and Turkey coffee were his favorite beverage: chocolate he seldom drank.—The guilty mind cannot avoid many melancholly apprehensions.—If we injure others, we must expect retaliation.—Let every man be fully persuaded in his own mind.—Peace and honor are the sheeves of virtue's harvest.—The black earth, every where obvious on the surface of the earth, we call mold.—The Roman pontif claims to be the suprem head of the church on earth.—High-seasoned food viciates the pallate, and disgusts it with plain fare.—The conscios receiver is as bad as the thief.—Alexander, the conquerer of the world, was, in fact, a robber and a murderer.—The Divine Being is not only the Creator, but the Ruler and Preserver of the world.—Honest endeavors, if persevered in, will finally be succesful.—He who dies for religion, is a martyr; he who suffers for it, is a confessor.—In the paroxism of passion, we sometimes give occasion for a life of repentence.—The mist which envelops many studies, is dissipated when we approach them.—The voice is sometimes obstructed by a hoarsness, or by viscusous phlegm.—The desert shall rejoice, and blossom as the rose.—The fruit and sweetmeats set on table after the meat, are called the desert.—We traversed the flowry fields, till the falling dews admonished us to return.—There is frequently a worm at the root of our most flourishing condition.—The stalk of ively is tough, and not fragil.—The roof is vaulted, and distills fresh water from every part of it.—Our imperfections are discernable by others, when we think they are concealed.—They think they shall be heard for there much speaking.—True criticism is not a captious, but a liberal art.—Integrity is our best defense against the evils of life.—No circumstance can licence evil, nor dispence with the rules of virtue.—We may be cyphers in the world's estimation, whilst we are advancing our own and others' value.—The path of vertue is the path of peace.—A dipthong is the coilition of two vowels to form one sound.—However forceable our temptations, they may be resisted.—I acknowledge my transgression; and my sin is ever before me.—The colledge of cardinals are the electers of the pope.—He had no colorable excuse to palliate his conduct.

Thy humourous vein, thy pleasing folly,  
Lie all neglected, all forgot.

If we are so conceited as obstinately to reject all advice, we must expect a deliction of friends.—Cronology is the science of computeing and ajusting the periods of time.

In groves we live, and lay on mossy beds,  
By chrystal streams, that murmur thro' the meads.

It is a secret cowardise which induces us to complement the vices of our superiors, to applaud the libertin, and laugh with the prophane.—The lark each morning waked me with her spritely lay.—There are no fewer than thirty-two species of the lilly.—We owe it to our visitors as well as to ourselves, to entertain them with usefull and sensible conversation.—Sponsors are those who become sureties for the children's education in the Christian faith.—The warrier's fame is often purchased by the blood of thousands.—Hope exhilarates the mind, and is the grand elixer, under all the evils of life.—The incence of gratitude, whilst it expresses our duty, and honors our benefacter, perfumes and regails ourselves.



## FALSE GRAMMAR,

## ADAPTED TO THE RULES OF SYNTAX.

## RULE I.

THEE must be more attentive to thy studies.—Them that oppress the poor to increase their riches, shall come to want.—Her that is virtuous, deserves esteem.—Whomsoever is contented, enjoys happiness.—Him that thinks twice before he speaks once, will speak twice the better for it.—He admonished all whom he thought had been disorderly, to be more watchful in future.—How dost thee do?—Art thee well?—Hast thee been to town to-day?—I can run as far as him.—You spoke better than her.—These are better than them.

## RULE II.

The girls was here, yesterday.—Thou should be more diligent in attending to thy studies.—Great pains has been taken to little purpose.—Frequent commission of sin, harden men in it.—There is many occasions in life, in which silence and simplicity are marks of true wisdom.—He dare not act contrary to his instructions.—What avails the best sentiments, if people do not live suitably to them?—Not one of them whom thou hast clothed in purple, are happy.—The following treatise, together with those which accompany it, were written many years ago, for my satisfaction.—In him were happily blended true dignity with softness of manners.—Reconciliation was offered, on conditions as moderate as was consistent with a permanent union.—Slight as the value of the things of time are, we continue to pursue them with unremitting diligence.

## RULE V.

He acted agreeable to his promise.—He speaks very fluent, but does not reason very coherently.—The task was the easier performed, from the cheerfulness with which they engaged in it.—He conducted himself very unsuitably to his profession.—She writes very neat, and spells accurate.—He was so deeply impressed with the subject, that few could speak nobler upon it.—Alas! they are miserable poor.—She was exceeding careful not to give offence.—He was prodigal, and his property is now near exhausted.—You read that very good.

## RULE VI.

The master loves thou, because thou art diligent.—He that is idle and mischievous reprove sharply.—Who have I reason to love so much as this friend of my youth.—The man who he raised from obscurity is dead.—He and they we know, but who art thou?—Who did they entertain so freely?—If he will not hear his best friend, who shall we send to admonish him?—They who have laboured to make us wise and good, are the persons who we ought particularly to love and respect.—Whatever others do, let thou and I perform our duty.—We should love, fear, and obey the Author of our being, as He who has power to reward or punish us forever.—He who committed the offence, thou shouldst correct, not I who am innocent.—Who do you see coming?—Ye have reason to dread his wrath, which one day will destroy ye both.

## RULE VII.

Suspecting not only we, but they also, he was studious to avoid all intercourse.—You are displeased with me for admonishing ye.—I could not avoid considering, in some degree, they as enemies to me, and thou as a suspicious friend.—From having exposed himself too freely in different climes, he entirely lost his health.

## RULE VIII.

Who did he give the book to?—From he that is needy and afflicted, turn not away.—Associate not thyself with those who none can speak well of.—Who does he study with?—What concord can subsist between those who commit crimes, and they who abhor them?—From the character of those persons who you associate with, your own will be established.—I hope it is not I who they are displeased with.—Who are you to work for?

## RULE IX.

Thou art him who sold the books.—I believe it to be they who raised the report.—It was not me who made the noise.—I would act the same part, if I were him, or in his situation.—He so much resembled his brother, that at first sight I took it to be he.—It could not have been her, for she always acts discreetly.—He is not the person whom he appeared to be.—After all their professions, is it possible to be them?—It might have been him, but there is no proof of it.—If it were not him, who do you imagine it to have been?—Who do you think me to be?—Whom do men say that I am?—Let him be who he may, I am not afraid of him.—I cannot tell who has befriended me, unless it is him from whom I have received many benefits.

## RULE X.

Thy ancestors virtue is not thine.—Thy fathers offence will not condemn thee.—Wisdoms precepts are the good boys greatest delight.—Hast thou read Cowpers poems?—The girls books were kept in better order than the boys.—I will not destroy the city for tens sake.—Nevertheless, Asa his heart was perfect with the Lord.—A mothers tenderness, and a fathers care, are natures gifts for mans advantage.—A mans manner's frequently influence his fortune.—Wisdoms precepts form the good mans interest and happiness.—And he cast himself down at Jesus feet.—Moses rod was turned into a serpent.—For Herodias sake, his brother Philip's wife.—If ye suffer for righteousness's sake, happy are ye.—Ye should be subject for conscience's sake.

## RULE XI.

I gave my book to James my cousin, he who was here yesterday.—This house belongs to Samuel, the carpenter, he who built the house.—Augustus, the Roman emperor, him who succeeded Julius Cesar, is variously described.—Those books are my friend's, him who keeps the library.—The estate was left to Simon and John, the two eldest sons, they that had been to Europe.—Art thou acquainted with Clarissa, the milliner, she whom we met in our walks this morning?

## RULE XIII.

He is a wise man which speaks little.—I do not think that any person should be censured for being careful of their reputation.—The woman which we saw is very amiable.—Rebecca took goodly raiment, which was with her in the house, and put them on Jacob.—They which seek wisdom will certainly find her.—The male among birds seems to discover no beauty, but in the colour of its species.—Every person, whatever be their station, should attend to the duties of morality and religion.—Let each of us cheerfully bear our part in the general burden.—If an animal should be taken out of its instinct, we should find him wholly destitute of understanding.—An orator's tongue should be agreeable to the ears of their auditors.—Take handfuls of ashes of the furnace, and let Moses sprinkle it towards the heaven, in the sight of Pharaoh; and it shall become small dust.—The exercise of reason appears as little in the sportsmen, as in the beasts whom they sometimes hunt, and by whom they are sometimes hunted.

## RULE XIV.

He loves you and I.—I esteem him, and her, and they.—My brother and him are tolerable grammarians.—You and us enjoy many privileges.—She and him are very unhappily connected.—Peter and me went to church.—Between you and I there is some disparity of years; but none between him and she.—If a man say, I love God, and hates his brother, he is a liar.—If thou sincerely desire and earnestly pursuest virtue, she will be found of thee.—He would neither do it himself, nor suffered another to do it.—You and her and him are to be blamed.—He invited my brother and I to see his garden.—She is more fond of gayety than him.

## RULE XV.

Him having ended his discourse, the assembly dispersed.—Them being willing to improve, the study was rendered agreeable.—Her being absent, the business was attended to by others.—They all had liberty to go, us only excepted.—The sun's being risen, it became very warm.—They were all more or less censurable, her only excepted, who was very circumspect in her conduct.—Thee having been unwatchful, the work is rendered more difficult.

## RULE XVI.

It is better to live on a little, than outlive a great deal.—You ought not walk too hastily.—We wish neither to write, nor read so fast.—She thought to went home last week.—He desires thee stay for him.

## RULE XVIII.

I need not to solicit him to do a kind action.—It is the difference of their conduct, which makes us to approve the one, and reject the other.—I bid him to shut the door.—I have seen some young persons to conduct themselves very discreetly.—I dare not to presume so hastily, lest I should give offence.—I bid him to go, but he refused.—I feel my heart to beat, but very faintly.—I dare not to express my sentiments upon so contested a subject.—I dare to say that we need not to urge nor to bid Charles to study his grammar: it is so plain as to make him to see the propriety of what he says, and to hear, understandingly, the explanations of his teacher. We need, therefore, only to let him to have the book; and if he see the other boys to learn, he will feel his heart to beat high with ambition.

## FALSE GRAMMAR,

## ADAPTED TO THE NOTES UNDER THE RULES OF SYNTAX.

**NOTE 1, under RULE I.**—To live soberly, righteously, and piously, are required of all men.—To do unto all men, as we would that they, in similar circumstances, should do unto us, constitute the great principles of virtue.—That it is our duty to promote the purity of our minds and bodies, to be just and kind to our fellow-creatures, and to be pious and faithful to Him that made us, admit not of any doubt in a rational and well-informed mind.

**NOTE 2, under RULE I.**—He that will learn, let him learn.—He that wishes to be great, let him pay diligent attention to his studies.—Whoever entertains such an opinion, he judges erroneously.

**NOTE 3, under RULE I.**—The sincere is always esteemed.—The inquisitive is generally talkative.—The generous never recounts minutely the actions they have done; nor the prudent, those they will do.

**NOTE 3, under RULE II.**—The people rejoices in that which should cause it sorrow.—The flock, and not the fleece, are, or ought to be, the objects of the shepherd's care.—The court have just ended, after having sat through the trial of a very long cause.—The crowd were so great, that the judges with difficulty made their way through them.—The Corporation of New-York consist of a Mayor, Aldermen, and Common Council.—The British Parliament are composed of king, lords, and commons.—When the nation complain, the rulers should listen to their voice.—In the days of youth, the multitude eagerly pursues pleasure as its chief good.—The Church have no power to inflict corporal punishment.—The fleet were seen sailing up the channel.—A great number do not always argue strength.—The meeting have established several salutary regulations.—The council was not unanimous, and it separated without coming to any determination.—The fleet is all arrived and moored in safety.—The committee was divided in its sentiment, and it has referred the business to the general meeting.—The committee was very full when this point was decided; and their judgment has not been called in question.—Why do this generation wish for greater evidence, when so much is already given?—The remnant of the people were persecuted with great severity.—Never were any people so much infatuated as the Jewish nation.—The shoal of herrings were of immense extent.—No society are chargeable with the disapproved conduct of particular members.

**NOTE 7, under RULE III.**—He is the strongest of the two.—This is the better apple of the three.—James and Samuel are brothers; and though James is the eldest, Samuel is the tallest of the two.—Which of those three kites is the higher?—His parents frequently visited him; but his mother, much the oftenest.—Samuel and Thomas are studying grammar, but as the latter is the most diligent of the two, he will probably attain a knowledge of it the soonest.—A talent of this kind, would, perhaps, prove the likeliest of any other to succeed.

**NOTE 8, under RULE III.**—These kind of indulgences softens and injures the mind.—Instead of improving yourselves, you have been playing this two hours.—Those sort of favours did real injury, under the appearance of kindness.—Please to give me that scissors.—I have not seen my parents this eight months.—We do not approve of these kind of practices.—Let us observe order, and apply ourselves with industry and care to our studies; and by this means we shall become learned and respected.

**NOTE 10, under RULE III.**—Give me one of them apples.—Which of them two persons has most distinguished himself.

**NOTE 1, under RULE V.**—He was pleasing not often, because he was vain.—William nobly acted, though he was unsuccessful.—From whence we may date likewise the period of this event.—It cannot be impertinent or ridiculous therefore to remonstrate.—He offered an apology, which being not admitted, he became submissive.—These things should be never separated.—Unless he have more government of himself, he will be always discontented.—Never sovereign was so much beloved by the people.—He was determined to invite back the king, and to call together his friends.—Not only he found her employed, but pleased and tranquil also.—We always should prefer our duty to our pleasure.—It is impossible continually to be at work.—The heavenly bodies are in motion perpetually.—Having not known, or having not considered, the measures proposed, he failed of success.—My opinion was given upon rather a cursory perusal of the book.—It is too common with mankind, to be engrossed, and overcome totally, by present events.—When the Romans were pressed with a foreign army, the women contributed all their rings and jewels voluntarily, to assist the government.—We ought to thankfully receive the many blessings with which we are favoured.—Please to not interrupt me.—We should strive to daily improve our precious time.—She is said to excellently have performed her part.—To always keep in view, the uncertainty of time, is the way to rightly estimate it.

**NOTE 7, under RULE V.**—I think I cannot help him no more.—Nothing never affected him so much as this misconduct of his friend.—Do not interrupt me thyself, nor let no one disturb my retirement.—Death never spareth none.—I cannot give no more for it.—Be honest, nor take no shape nor semblance of disguise.

**NOTE 2, under RULE VII.**—By the exercising our judgment, it is improved.—It is an overvaluing ourselves, to reduce every thing to the narrow measure of our own capacities.—By observing of truth, thou wilt command esteem, as well as secure peace.—A person cannot be wise or good, without the taking pains for it.—The loving our enemies is a divine command.—Learning of languages is very difficult.—By reading of books written by the best authors, his mind became highly improved.—The not attending to this rule is the cause of a very common error.

**NOTE 3, under RULE VII.**—If some events had not fell out very unexpectedly, I should have been present.—He soon begun to be weary of having nothing to do.—The house was shook by the violence of the storm.—He had wrote and read much on the subject.—I seen my old friend last week.—They who have bore a part in the labour, shall share the reward.—By too eager a pursuit, he run a great risk of being disappointed.—When the rules have been wantonly broke, there can be no plea for favour.—He would not have went, if he had known it.—You who have forsook your friends, are entitled to no confidence.

**NOTE 3, under RULE VIII.**—On these occasions, the pronoun is governed by, and consequently agrees with, the preceding word.—They were refused entrance into, and forcibly driven from, the house.

**NOTE 10, under RULE VIII.**—We should entertain no prejudice to simple and rustic persons.—She finds no difficulty of fixing her mind.—There was no water, and he died for thirst.—We can fully confide on none but the truly good.—I have no occasion of his services.—Many have profited from good advice.—Her sobriety is no derogation to her understanding.—The error was occasioned by compliance to earnest entreaty.—This is a principle that is consonant with our nature.—The first proposal was essentially different, and inferior to the second.—Several alterations and additions have been made to the work.—The former part of the sentence equally relates, and is connected with the latter.—Neither has he, nor any other persons, suspected so much dissimulation.—The intentions of some of these philosophers, nay, of many, might, and probably were good.—Sincerity is as valuable and even more valuable than knowledge.—Thou hearest the sound of the wind, but canst not tell whence it comest, and whither it goest.—The deaf man, whose ears were opened, and his tongue loosened, doubtless glorified the great Physician.—He is more bold and active, but not so wise and studious as his companion.—I have written to my friend last week, but have yet received no answer.—He is a person whom I remember these many years.—I have been in London a year, and seen the king last summer.—After we visited the city, we returned, content and thankful, to our retired and peaceful habitation.—Next week is the time for holding the annual meeting.—I have compassion on the multitude, because they continue with me now three days.—I should be obliged to him, if he will gratify me in that particular.—The next new-year's day, I shall be at school three years.—John will earn his wages, when his service is completed.—Be that as it will, he cannot justify his conduct.—I purpose to go to New-York next week; and after I have finished there, to proceed to the Southern States.—I very much desire that I might be more watchful in future.—Ye will not come unto me that you might have life.—And he that was dead sat up and began to speak.—His sea-sickness was so great, that I often feared he would have died before our arrival.—It required so much care that I thought I should have lost it before I reached home.—Must it not be expected, that he would have defended an authority, which had been so long exercised without controversy?

**NOTE 2, under RULE X.**—I bought the knives at Johnson's, the cutler's.—The silk was purchased at Brown's, the mercer's and haberdasher's.—Lord Feversham's the general's tent.—This palace had been the Grand Sultan's, Mahomet's.—I will not for David's thy father's sake.—He took refuge at the Governor, the king's representative's.—Whose works are these? they are Cicero, the most eloquent of men's.

**NOTE 3, under RULE X.**—It was the men's, women's, and children's lot, to suffer great calamities.—Peter's, John's, and Andrew's occupation, was that of fishermen.—This measure gained the king, as well as the people's approbation.—Not only the counsel's and attorney's, but the judge's opinion also, favoured his cause.—The world's government is not left to chance.—She married my son's wife's brother.—This is my wife's brother's partner's house.—It was necessary to have both the physician's and the surgeon's advice.—They very justly condemned the prodigal's, as they called him, senseless and extravagant conduct.—They implicitly obeyed their protector's, as they called him, imperious mandates.—The extent of the prerogative of the king of England, is sufficiently ascertained.

**NOTE 4, under RULE X.**—This picture of the king's does not much resemble him.—These pictures of the king were sent to him from Italy.—This estate of the corporation's is much encumbered.—That is the eldest son of the king of England's.

**NOTE 6, under RULE X.**—What can be the cause of the Parliament neg-

lecting so important a business?—Much depends on this rule being observed.—The time of William making the experiment at length arrived.—It is very probable that this assembly was called, to clear some doubts which the king had, about the lawfulness of the Hollanders their throwing off the monarchy of Spain, and their withdrawing entirely their allegiance to that crown.—If we alter the situation of any of the words, we shall presently be sensible of the melody suffering.—Such will ever be the effect of youth associating with vicious companions.

NOTE 1, *under RULE XII.*—Oh! thee, who art so unmindful of thy duty!—Ah! wretched I, how ungrateful!—O! happy them, surrounded with so many blessings!—Hail thee, that art highly favoured!—How swiftly our time passes away! and ah! we, how little concerned to improve it!—Welcome thee, who hast been so long expected!

NOTE 1, *under RULE XIII.*—The cares of this world they often choke the growth of virtue.—Disappointments and afflictions, however disagreeable, they often improve us.

NOTE 6, *under RULE XIII.*—He would not be persuaded but what I was greatly in fault.—I do not doubt but what he did it for the best.

NOTE 1, *under RULE XIV.*—Sobriety and humility leads to honour.—Idleness and ignorance are the parent of many vices.—Humility and love, whatever obscurities may involve religious tenets, constitutes the essence of true religion.—Why is whiteness and coldness in snow?—What signifies the counsel and care of preceptors, when youth think they have no need of assistance?—Religion and knowledge excels wealth and grandeur, and it will render its possessor more honourable.—Coffee and sugar is imported from the West Indies, and great quantities of it are used every year.—The inquisitive and curious is generally talkative.—To be of a pure and humble mind, to execute benevolence towards others, and to cultivate piety towards God, is the sure means of becoming peaceful and happy.

NOTE 2, *under RULE XIV.*—Neither he nor she were at home.—Ignorance or negligence have been the causes of this mistake.—Neither Helen nor Julia are the ladies, whom we saw at their devotion.—Knowledge or virtue are preferable to riches; strive therefore in early youth to attain them.—We are not such a machine as a clock or a watch, which move merely as they are moved.—Despise no infirmity of mind or body, nor any condition of life; for they are, perhaps, to be thy own lot.—There are many faults in spelling, which neither analogy nor pronunciation justify.—Speaking impatiently to servants, or any thing that betrays inattention or ill humour, are certainly criminal.—Let it be remembered, that it is not the uttering, or the hearing of certain words, that constitute the worship of the Almighty.

NOTE 3, *under RULE XIV.*—Either thou or I art greatly mistaken in our judgment.—I or thou am the person who must undertake the business proposed.—He or I is to blame.—I or he am going to college.

NOTE 4, *under RULE XIV.*—Neither they nor he was present.—Neither riches nor poverty was injurious to him.—Either the boys or thou wast in fault.—The cares of this life, or the deceitfulness of riches, has choked the seeds of virtue in many a promising mind.—Some parts of the ship and cargo were secured, but neither the sailors nor the captain was saved.—Whether one person or more was concerned in the business, does not appear.—Was the globe or the maps injured by the accident?—Either the driver, the horses, or carriage, was out of order.—Both of the scholars, or one of them at least, was present at the transaction.

NOTE 6, *under RULE XIV.*—I shall walk out to-day unless it rains.—Though he falls, he shall not be utterly cast down.—Although he were thy friend, he did not justify thy conduct.—Was I to enumerate all her virtues, it would look like flattery.—Though the fact be extraordinary, it certainly did happen.—No one engages in that business, unless he aims at reputation.

NOTE 8, *under RULE XIV.*—Solid peace and contentment consist neither in beauty or riches.—This writing is not as good as that.—The task is so great as I fear I cannot perform it.—Though he was rich, but for our sakes he became poor.—Whether they will consent to the proposal, nor reject it, is not yet known.—The place is not as pleasant as we expected.

NOTE 2, *under RULE XVII.*—We have done no more than it was our duty to have done.—I always intended to have rewarded my son according to his merit.—I intended to have written by the last mail.—I found my friend in much better circumstances than I expected to have found him.—George expected to have received an answer last week.—These enemies of Christianity were confounded, whilst they were expecting to have found an opportunity to have betrayed its author.—The prisoner was acquitted by the court, although he was supposed, by many, to be concerned in the plot in which he was implicated, and which has so happily exploded.—It would have given me great satisfaction to relieve him from that distressed situation.—To be censured by him, would have proved an insuperable discouragement.—It would have afforded me still greater pleasure, to receive his approbation at an earlier period: but to receive it at all, was a credit to me.

leads men; under the semblance of piety, on the one hand, and of virtue on the other hand.—It was no exaggerated tale; for she was really in that sad condition that her friend represented her.—An army present a painful sight to a feeling mind.—The enemies who we have most to fear, are those of our own hearts.—Thou art the Messiah, the Son of God, who was to come into the world, and hast been so long promised and desired.—Thomas disposition is better than his brothers; and he appears to be the happiest man: but some degree of trouble is all mens portion.—Though remorse sleep sometimes during prosperity, it will awake surely in adversity.—It is an invariable law to our present condition, that every pleasure that are pursued to excess, convert themselves into poison.—If a man brings into the solitary retreat of age, a vacant, an unimproved mind, where no knowledge dawns, no ideas rise; which within itself has nothing to feed upon, many a heavy, and many a comfortless day he must necessarily pass.—I cannot yield to such dishonourable conduct, neither at the present moment of difficulty, nor, I trust, under no circumstance whatever.—Themistocles concealed the enterprises of Pausanius, either thinking it base to betray the secrets trusted to his confidence, or imagined it impossible for such dangerous and ill-concerted schemes to take effect.—Pericles gained such an ascendancy over the minds of the Athenians, that he might be said to attain a monarchical power in Athens.—Christ did applaud the liberality of the poor widow, who he had seen casting her two mites in the treasury.—A multiplicity of little kind offices, in persons frequently conversant with each other, are the band of society and of friendship.—To do good to them that hate us, and, on no occasion, to seek revenge, is the duty of a Christian.—If a man profess a regard for the duties of religion, and neglect that of morality, that man's religion is vain.—Affluence might give us respect, in the eyes of the vulgar, but will not recommend us to the wise and good.—The polite, accomplished libertine, is but miserable amidst all his pleasures: the rude inhabitant of Lapland is happier than him.—The cheerful and the gay, when warmed by pleasure and by mirth, lose that sobriety and that self-denial, which is essential to the support of virtue.—I knew thou wert not slow to hear the requests of thy obedient children.—How much real virtue and merit are exposed to suffer the hardships of a stormy life!—This is one of the duties which requires peculiar circumspection.—More complete happiness than that I have described, seldom falls to the lot of mortals.—There are principles in man, which ever have, and ever will incline him to offend.—Whence have there arose such a great variety of opinions and tenets in religion?—Its stature is less than that of a man; but its strength and agility much greater.—They that honour me, them will I honour.—He summonses me to attend, and I must summons the others.—Then did the officer lay hold of him, and executed him immediately.—Who is that person whom I saw you introduce, and present him to the duke?—I offer observations that a long and chequered pilgrimage have enabled me to make on man.—Every church and sect of people have a set of opinions peculiar to themselves.—May thou as well as me, be meek, patient, and forgiving.—These men were under high obligations to have adhered to their friend in every situation of life.—Their example, their influence, their fortune, every talent they possess, dispenses blessings on all around them.—When a string of such sentences succeed one another, the effect is disagreeable.—I have lately been in Gibraltar, and have seen the commander in chief.—Propriety of pronunciation is, the giving to every word the sound which the politest usage of the language appropriates to it.—The book is printed very neat, and on a fine wove paper.—The fables of the ancients are, many of them, highly instructive.—He resembled one of those solitary animals, that has been forced from its forest to gratify human curiosity.—There is not, nor ought not to be, such a thing as constructive treason.—He is a new created knight, and his dignity sets awkward on him.—Hatred or revenge are things deserving of censure, wherever they are found to exist.—If you please to employ your thoughts on that subject, you would easily conceive our miserable condition.—His speech contains one of the grossest and infamousest calumnies which ever was uttered.—A too great variety of studies dissipate and weaken the mind.—Those two authors have each of them their merit.—James was resolved to not indulge himself in such a cruel amusement.—The not attending to this rule, is the source of a very common error.—Calumny and detraction are sparks, which if you do not blow, they will go out of themselves.—Clelia is a vain woman, whom, if we do not flatter, she will be disgusted.—That celebrated work was nearly ten years published, before its importance was at all understood.—Ambition is so insatiable that it will make any sacrifices to attain its objects.—A great mass of rocks thrown together by the hand of nature with wildness and confusion, strike the mind with more grandeur, than if they were adjusted to one another with the accuratest symmetry.

Reason's whole pleasure, all the joys of sense,  
Lies in three words, health, peace, and competence.

Having thus began to throw off the restraints of reason, he was soon hurried into deplorable excesses.—These arts have enlightened, and will enlighten, every person who shall attentively study them.—When we succeed in our plans, its not to be attributed always to ourselves; the aid of others often promote the end, and claim our acknowledgment.—Their intentions were good; but wanting prudence, they mist the mark for which they aimed.—I have not, nor shall not consent to a proposal so unjust.—We have subjected ourselves to much expense, that thou may be well educated.—This treaty was made at earl Moreton the governor's castle.—Be especially careful that thou givest no offence to the aged or helpless.—The business was no sooner opened, but it was cordially acquiesced in.—As to his general conduct, he deserved punishment as much, or more than his companion. He left a son of a singular character, and behaved so ill that he was put in prison.—If he does but approve my endeavours, it will be an ample reward.—I beg the favour of your acceptance of a copy of a view of the manufactories of the West Riding of the county of York.—I intended to have written the letter, before he urged me to it; and, therefore, he has not all the merit of it.—All the power of ridicule, aided by the desertion of friends, and the dimi-

### *Instances of false Syntax, promiscuously disposed.*

VIRTUE and mutual confidence is the soul of friendship. Where these are wanting, disgust or hatred often follow little differences.—Time and chance happeneth to all men; but every person do not perceive whom it is that govern those powerful causes.—The active mind of man, never or seldom rests satisfied with their present condition, howsoever prosperous.—Habits must be acquired of temperance and of self-denial, that we may be able to resist pleasure, and to endure pain, when either of them interfere with our duty.—The error of resting wholly on faith, or on works, is one of those seductions which most easily mis-



nution of his estate, were not able to shake his principles.—In his conduct was treachery, and in his words, faithless professions.—Though the measure be mysterious, it is worthy of attention.—Be solicitous to aid such deserving persons, who appear to be destitute of friends.—Ignorance, or the want of light, produce sensuality, covetousness, and those violent contests with others about trifles, which occasions so much misery and crimes in the world.—He will one day reap the reward of his labour, if he is diligent and attentive. Until that period comes, let him be contented and patient.—To the resolutions which we have, upon due consideration, once adopted as rules of conduct, let us adhere firmly.—He has little more of the great man besides the title.—Though he was my superior in knowledge, he would not have thence a right to impose his sentiments.—That picture of the emperor's, is a very exact resemblance of him.—How happy are the virtuous, who can rest on the protection of the powerful arm who made the earth and the heaven!—Prosperity and adversity may be improved equally: both the one and the other proceeds from the same author.—He acted conformable with his instructions, and cannot be censured justly.—The orators did not forget to enlarge themselves on so popular a subject.—The language of Divine Providence to the exertions of all human agents, is, "Hitherto shalt thou come, and no further."—Idle persons imagine, howsoever deficient they be in point of duty, they consult at least their own satisfaction.—Good as the cause is, it is one from which numbers are deserted.—Every thing we here enjoy, change, decay, and come to an end. All float on the surface of the river, which is running to a boundless ocean, with a swift current.—The winter has not been as severe as we expected it to have been.—Temperance, more than medicines, are the proper means of curing many diseases.—They understand the practical part better than him; but he is much better acquainted with the theory than them.—When we have once drawn the line, by intelligence and precision, between our duty and sin, the line we ought on no occasion to transgress.—All those distinguished by extraordinary talents, have extraordinary duties to perform.—No person could speak stronger on this subject, nor behave nobler, than our young advocate for the cause of toleration.—His conduct was so provoking, that many will condemn him, and a few will pity him.—The people's happiness is the statesman's honour.—We are in a perilous situation. On one side, and the other, dangers meet us; and each extreme shall be pernicious to virtue.—Several pictures of the Sardinian king were transmitted to France.—When I last saw him, he had grown considerably.—If we consult the improvement of mind, or the health of body, it is well known exercise is the great instrument for promoting both.—If it were them who acted so ungratefully, they are doubly in fault.—Whether virtue promotes our interest or no, we must adhere to her dictates.—We should be studious to avoid too much indulgence, as well as restraint, in our management of children.—No human happiness is so complete, as does not contain some imperfection.—His father cannot hope for this success, unless his son gives better proofs of genius, or applies himself with indefatigable labour.—The house framed a remonstrance, where they spoke with great freedom of the king's prerogative.—The conduct which has been mentioned, is one of those articles which seduces men most easily, under appearance of benevolence.—This is the person who we are so much obliged to, and who we expected to have seen, when the favour was conferred.—He is a person of great property, but does not possess the esteem of his neighbours.—They were solicitous to ingratiate with those, who it was dishonourable to favour.—The great diversity which takes place among men, is not owing to a distinction that nature made in their original powers, as much as to the superior diligence, with which some have improved these powers beyond others.—While we are unoccupied in what is good, evil is at hand continually.—Not a creature is there that moves, nor a vegetable that grows, but what, when minutely examined, furnish materials of pious admiration.—What can be the reason of the committee having delayed this business?—I know not whether Charles was the author, but I understood it to be he.—A good and well-cultivated mind, is far more preferable than rank or riches.—Charity to the poor, when it is governed by knowledge and prudence, there are no persons who will not admit it to be a virtue.—His greatest concern, and highest enjoyment, were to be approved in the sight of his Creator.—Let us not set our hearts on such a mutable, such an unsatisfying world.—When we see bad men to be honoured and prosperous in the world, it is some discouragement to virtue.—The furniture was all purchased at Wentworth's the joiner's.—Every member of the body, every bone, joint, and muscle, lie exposed to many disorders; and the greatest prudence or precaution, or the deepest skill of the physician, are not sufficient to prevent them.—It is right said, that though faith justify us, yet works must justify our faith.—If an academy is established for the cultivation of our language, let them stop the license of translators; whose idleness and ignorance, if it be suffered to proceed, will reduce us to babble a dialect of French.—It is of great consequence that a teacher firmly believes both the truth and importance of those principles which he inculcates upon others; and that he not only speculatively believes them, but has a lively and serious feeling of them.—It is not the uttering, or the hearing certain words, that constitute the worship of the Almighty. It is the heart that praises, or prays. If the heart accompany not the words that are spoken, we offer a sacrifice of fools.—Neither flatter or condemn the rich or the great.—He has travelled much, and passed through many stormy seas and lands.—You must be sensible that there is, and can be no other person but me, who could give the information desired.—To be patient, resigned, and thankful, under afflictions and disappointments, demonstrate genuine piety.—Alvarez was a man of corrupt principles, and of detestable conduct; and, what is still worse, gloried in his shame.—As soon as the sense of a Supreme Being is lost, so soon the great check is taken off which keep under restraint the passions of men. Mean desires, low pleasures, takes place of the greater and the nobler sentiments which reason and religion inspires.—We should be careful not to follow the example of many persons, to censure the opinions, manners, and customs of others, merely because they are foreign to us.

—Steady application, as well as genius and abilities, are necessary to produce eminence.—There is in that seminary, several students considerably skilled in mathematical knowledge.—If Providence clothe the grass of the field, and shelters and adorns the flowers, that every where grows wild amongst it, will he not clothe and protect his servants and children much more?—We are too often hurried with the violence of passion, or with the allurements of pleasure.—High hopes, and florid views, is a great enemy to tranquillity.—Year after year steal something from us; till the decaying fabric totters of itself, and crumbles at length into dust.—I intended to have finished the letter before the bearer called, that he might not have been detained; but I was prevented by company.—George is the most learned and accomplished of all the other students, that belong to the seminary.—This excellent and well-written treatise, with others that might be mentioned, were the foundation of his love of study.—There can be no doubt but that the pleasures of the mind excel those of sense.—Many would exchange gladly their honours, beauty, and riches, for that more quiet and humbler station, which thou art now dissatisfied with.—Though the scene was a very affecting one, Louis showed a little emotion on the occasion.—The climate of England is not so pleasant as those of France, Spain, or Italy.—Much of the good and evil that happens to us in this world, are owing to apparently undesigned and fortuitous events; but it is the Supreme Being which secretly directs and regulates all things.—To despise others on account of their poverty, or to value ourselves for our wealth, are dispositions highly culpable.—This task was the easier performed, from the cheerfulness with which he engaged in it.—She lamented the unhappy fate of Lucretia, who seemed to her another name for chastity.—He has not yet cast off all the regard for decency; and that is the most can be advanced in his favour.—The girls school was better conducted formerly than the boys.—The disappointments he has met with, or the loss of his much-loved friend, has occasioned a total derangement of his mental powers.—The concourse of people were so great, that with difficulty we passed through them.—All the women, children, and treasure, which remained in the city, fell under the victor's power.—They have already made great progress in their studies, and, if attention and diligence continues, will soon fulfil the expectations of their friends.—It is amazing his propensity to this vice, against every principle of interest and honour.—These kind of vices, though they inhabit the upper circles of life, are not less pernicious, than those we meet with amongst the lowest of men.—He acted agreeable to the dictates of prudence, though he were in a situation exceeding delicate.—If I had known the distress of my friend, it would be my duty, and it certainly would have given me pleasure, to relieve him.—They admired the countryman's, as they called him, candour and uprightness.—The new set of curtains did not correspond to the old pair of blinds.—The tutor commends him for being more studious than any other pupils of the school.

Two principles in human nature reign,  
Self-love to urge, and reason to restrain:  
Nor that a good, nor this a bad we call;  
Each works its end, to move or govern all.

Temperance and exercise, howsoever little they may be regarded, they are the best means of preserving health.—He has greatly blessed me; yes, even I, who, loaded with kindness, hath not been sufficiently grateful.—No persons feel the distresses of others, so much as those that have experienced distress themselves.—Disgrace not your station, by that grossness of sensuality, that levity of dissipation, or that insolence of rank, which bespeak a little mind.—A circle, a square, a triangle, or a hexagon, please the eye by their regularity, as beautiful figures.—His conduct was equally unjust as dishonourable.—Though, at first, he begun to defend himself, yet, when the proofs appeared against him, he dared not any longer to contend.—Many persons will not believe but what they are free from prejudices.—The pleasure or pain of one passion, differ from those of another.—The court of Spain, who gave the order, were not aware of the consequence.—If the acquisitions he has made, and qualified him to be a useful member of society, should have been misapplied, he will be highly culpable.—There was much spoke and wrote on each side of the question; but I have chose to take part with neither.—Was there no bad men in the world, who vex and distress the good, they might appear in the light of harmless innocence; but could have no opportunity for displaying fidelity and magnanimity, patience and fortitude.—The most ignorant, and the most savage tribes of men, when they have looked round on the earth, and on the heavens, could not avoid ascribing their origin to some invisible, designing cause, and felt a propensity to adore their Creator.—Let us not forget, that something more than gentleness and modesty, something more than complacency of temper and affability of manners, are requisite to form a worthy man, or a true Christian.—One of the first, and the most common extreme in moral conduct, is placing all virtue in justice, or in generosity.—It is an inflexible regard to principle, which has ever marked the characters of them who distinguished themselves eminently in public life; who patronised the cause of justice against powerful oppressors; in critical times, have supported the falling rights and liberties of men; and reflected honour on their nation and country.—When it is with regard to trifles, that diversity or contrariety of opinions show themselves, it is childish in the last degree, if this becomes the ground of estranged affection. When, from such a cause, there arise any breach of friendship, human weakness is discovered then in a mortifying light. In matters of serious moment, the sentiments of the best and worthiest might vary from that of their friends, according as their lines of life diverge, or as their temper, and habits of thought, presents objects under different points of view. But with candid and liberal minds, unity of affection still will be preserved.

While all our hearts, and all our songs,  
Join 't' admire the feast,  
Each of us cry, with thankful tongues,  
"Lord, why was I a guest?"



The following encomiums, together with many others, were passed upon the first edition of Grammar Simplified; since the publication of which, the work has undergone a very thorough revision, and experienced some alterations; and, I may add, has had many very valuable additions made to it; although the general plan remains the same.

Hartford, September 27, 1819.

Mr. Jeremiah Greenleaf, of Brattleborough, Vt. has recently published a work, entitled "Grammar Simplified; or, an Ocular Analysis of the English Language." Before we had an opportunity of examining this publication, we considered it one of the numerous efforts of literary empiricism with which our country has been debased, and imagined it would prove as ephemeral and as useless as they. An examination of the work, however, and more especially, a visit to the school of Mr. Greenleaf, where we had an opportunity of witnessing the practical effect of his system and mode of instruction, have, we confess, not only overcome our prejudices, but convinced us, most thoroughly, of the utility of the work, and the pre-eminence it has over the Grammars commonly made use of in our schools. Mr. Greenleaf has indulged in no visionary speculations or idle theories. He has adopted the general principles of our best English and American Philologists and Grammaticians, but has, in truth, so simplified and elucidated them as to render them plain and intelligible to all, and to make the study a most agreeable and interesting one to his pupils. From the experiment he has here made with a school, consisting mostly of small children, we are satisfied he has greatly facilitated the attainment of this useful science, and deserves the patronage and encouragement of the friends of literature, and the public.

The foregoing paragraph we have copied from the Hampshire Gazette. Mr. Greenleaf has lately been in this city, and instructed a class; and we have taken some pains to ascertain the utility of his system. The result is, an entire conviction that his plan of instruction is superior to any method we have seen. His definitions, rules, and examples, are judiciously selected from the most approved authors, and the work is so arranged, as, in the hands of a good instructor, to afford an admirable facility to the learner. Mr. G. has many recommendations, several of which are from the best scholars in the New-England States. Having an unconquerable aversion to every thing like empiricism, we should not have made a favourable observation upon this work, did we believe it, in any respect, allied to literary quackery.—*Connecticut Mirror*.

Northampton, August 6, 1819.

We, the undersigned, have examined Mr. Greenleaf's "Grammar Simplified," and have received from him some explanations of his mode of instruction, and are fully satisfied, that his system is more simple, and is calculated to impart a knowledge of grammar with more facility, and in a much shorter time, than any now in use.

W. ALLEN, Late President  
of Dartmouth College.  
E. H. MILLS, A. M.  
E. HUNT, A. M.  
S. R. HAZEN, A. M.

W. RICHARDS, A. M.  
S. P. WILLIAMS, A. M.  
SAMUEL CSGOOD, A. M.  
J. HAWES, A. M.

Hartford, September 2, 1819.

Sir—I have examined, with some care, the "Grammar Simplified;" and do not hesitate to say, that the general plan of the work is an admirable one: the best of the kind which I have ever seen, and if successfully reduced to practice, which I have no doubt it may be, that it will possess advantages over any other method now in use, in teaching youth the principles of the grammar of our language. Yours respectfully,

T. H. GALLAUDET,  
Principal of the Deaf and Dumb Asylum.

Mr. J. Greenleaf.

Yale College, November 10, 1819.

From a cursory examination of Mr. Greenleaf's method of instructing in English Grammar, I am satisfied that it combines the advantages of greater simplicity, precision, and correctness; and that, if successfully applied, it will advance the young student in the technical business of parsing, with more rapidity, than any system within my knowledge.

CHAUNCEY A. GOODRICH,  
Professor of Belles-Lettres.

New-York, January 29, 1820.

Sir—I think you may, with great confidence, rely on the very respectable recommendations you have shown me, of your "Grammar Simplified;" but as you desire to have my opinion of its merits, it gives me pleasure to add, that it appears to me to be well calculated to assist youth in acquiring a knowledge of the science of which it treats. I am respectfully your obedient servant,

CADWALLADER D. COLDEN,  
Mayor of the City of New-York.

Mr. Jeremiah Greenleaf.

From the Rev. J. M. Mason, D. D. late Provost of Columbia College, now President of Carlisle College, Penn.

New-York, Love-Lane, March 31, 1820.

I have recently looked over, with some curiosity and attention, a little work, by Mr. Jeremiah Greenleaf, entitled "Grammar Simplified." It is exceedingly brief, and proposes to teach the rudiments of that art in an almost incredibly short time. Considering the voluminous treatises on this subject, and the time usually spent in acquiring a tolerable knowledge of it, the author must necessarily encounter much public prejudice.

It has unfortunately happened that almost every man of obtuse intellect and strong powers of drudgery, thinks himself qualified to write a Grammar;

which, of course, he contrives to make as unintelligible as possible; and hence Grammar, instead of being an inviting, becomes an intolerably irksome task.

Children have to labour year after year, without much progress, through a literary swamp, and when they grow weary, their steps are often quickened by the birch; while the blame is wholly and solely to be attributed to the stupid method of instruction.

This little treatise proffers a relief. It does not pretend to conduct the pupil through the depths of grammatical science—not to make him a master of its philosophical principles, but to give him a competent knowledge of it for practical purposes—to familiarize the matter of it to his mind—to put him in possession of those elements, without an accurate acquaintance with which, ulterior advances are impracticable.

The whole secret lies in stripping it of every thing but the very essentials—in placing these before the eye of the learner, and in accustoming him to the application of every thing as he goes along.

The public may be assured that Mr. Greenleaf is no quack; but that he performs much more than the modesty of his title would lead his reader to expect.

From the Rev. John Ireland.

Brooklyn, April 10, 1820.

I had frequently expressed every sentiment that is contained in the accompanying letter of Dr. Mason, before I had seen that letter; and it affords me great satisfaction to learn, that so good a judge as Dr. M. undoubtedly is, coincides with me in every particular relating to Mr. Greenleaf's mode of teaching English Grammar. I sincerely hope that this system will be universally approved, and generally adopted in our schools and other seminaries of learning.

JOHN IRELAND.

New-York, September 8, 1820.

Having examined Mr. Greenleaf's new system of English Grammar, I cheerfully concur in recommending it, as a system well calculated to communicate a competent knowledge of the subject, as to all practical purposes, and in a much shorter time than any now in use.

WILLIAM HARRIS,  
President of Columbia College.

To Mr. Jeremiah Greenleaf.

Your publication, on a method of rendering the study of Grammar more simple and easy to young persons, strikes me in a very favourable manner. There is a perspicuity and plainness in your mode of illustrating the parts of speech, which must, as it appears to me, immediately impress the minds of learners.

The man, who removes impediments and clears away stumbling-blocks from the paths of knowledge, is a public benefactor. I wish to witness the happy operation and extensive diffusion of your plan, and request you to gratify me with a visit to your school the earliest practicable day.

New-York, September 7, 1820.

SAMUEL L. MITCHILL.

The following, although the effect of the second edition, is, on account of its close alliance to the preceding, inserted in this place. The Latin Grammar, to which Dr. Mitchell alludes, will be published, and ready for sale, in November following.

Extract of a letter from Dr. Mitchell to his friend, on the method of teaching Grammar, dated New-York, March 25, 1821.

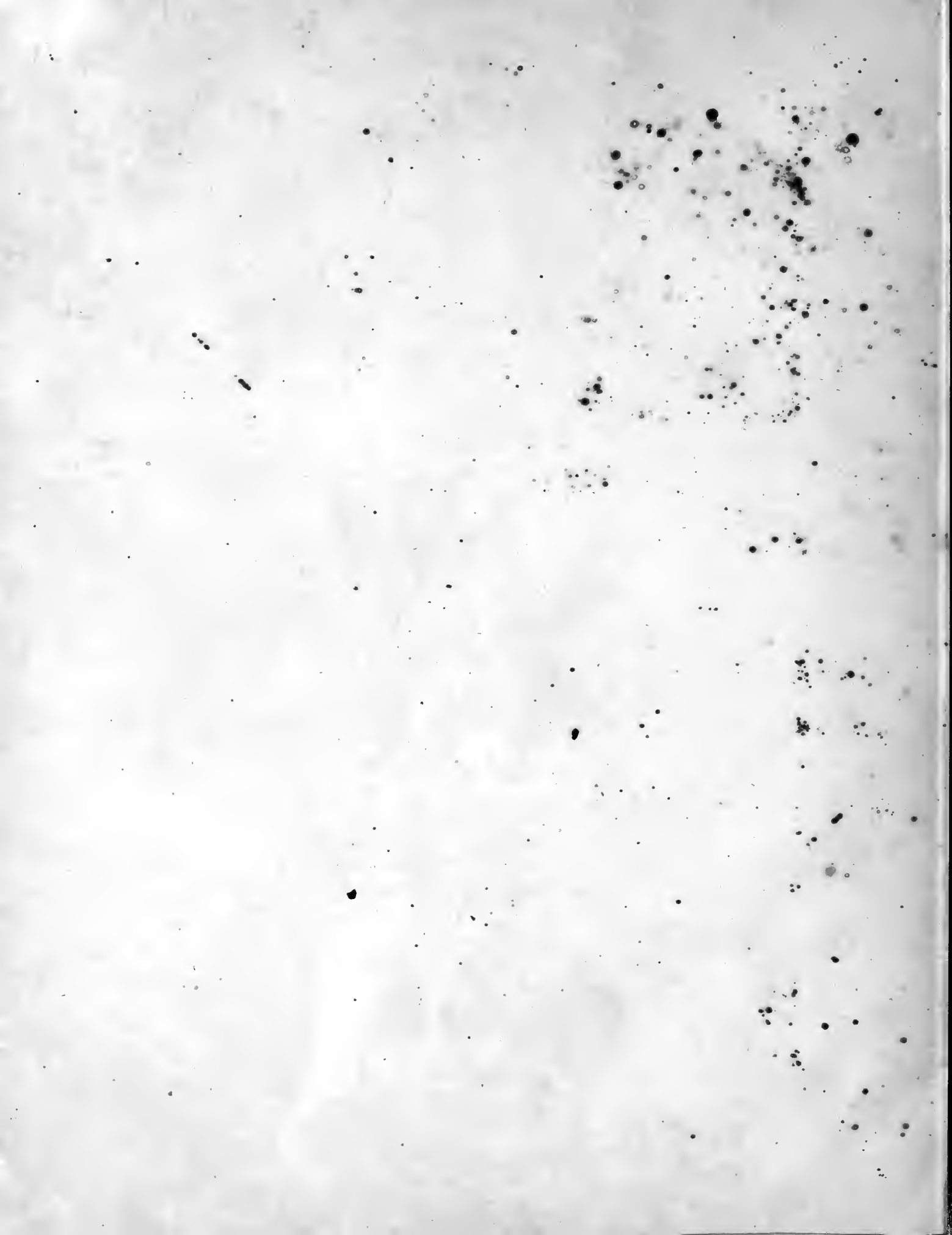
"The resolution of the English tongue into ten sorts of words, called parts of speech, is the basis of that exercise in schools which is called parsing. By this is understood, an acquaintance with the several materials or ingredients employed in conversation and writing, and their connexion with and dependence upon each other. In a task of such complication, years have been frequently occupied in making learners comprehend Etymology and Syntax; to say nothing of Orthography and Prosody. It was therefore very desirable that some plainer and easier method of instruction should be practised, than that in common use. Mr. J. Greenleaf seems to have hit upon this desideratum. His elementary book, entitled "Grammar Simplified," is really the text upon which he instructs his pupils. I was present, a few evenings ago, at an examination of his class, and was highly pleased with the indications his scholars gave of their proficiency, in a very short time. A number of those, who were reported to have received lessons from him for a term not exceeding three weeks, displayed a knowledge of the noun, verb, article, and all the auxiliary and derivative forms of expression, that both surprised and delighted me. His plan, now reduced to practice, appears to save much time and labour. I congratulate the rising youth of my country, that Allen Fisk, esq. is engaged in an application of the same principle, which Mr. G. has developed, to the teaching of the Greek and Latin languages; and from the specimen of Mr. F.'s elementary tract, on the latter of these, which I have seen, I entertain sanguine hopes of its great and lasting utility; and wherever we can abridge toil, and save cost, consistently with the performance of excellent or improved work, in intellectual as well as mechanical operations, I say, let us do so. Truly, and with sincere gratulation, yours,

SAMUEL L. MITCHILL.

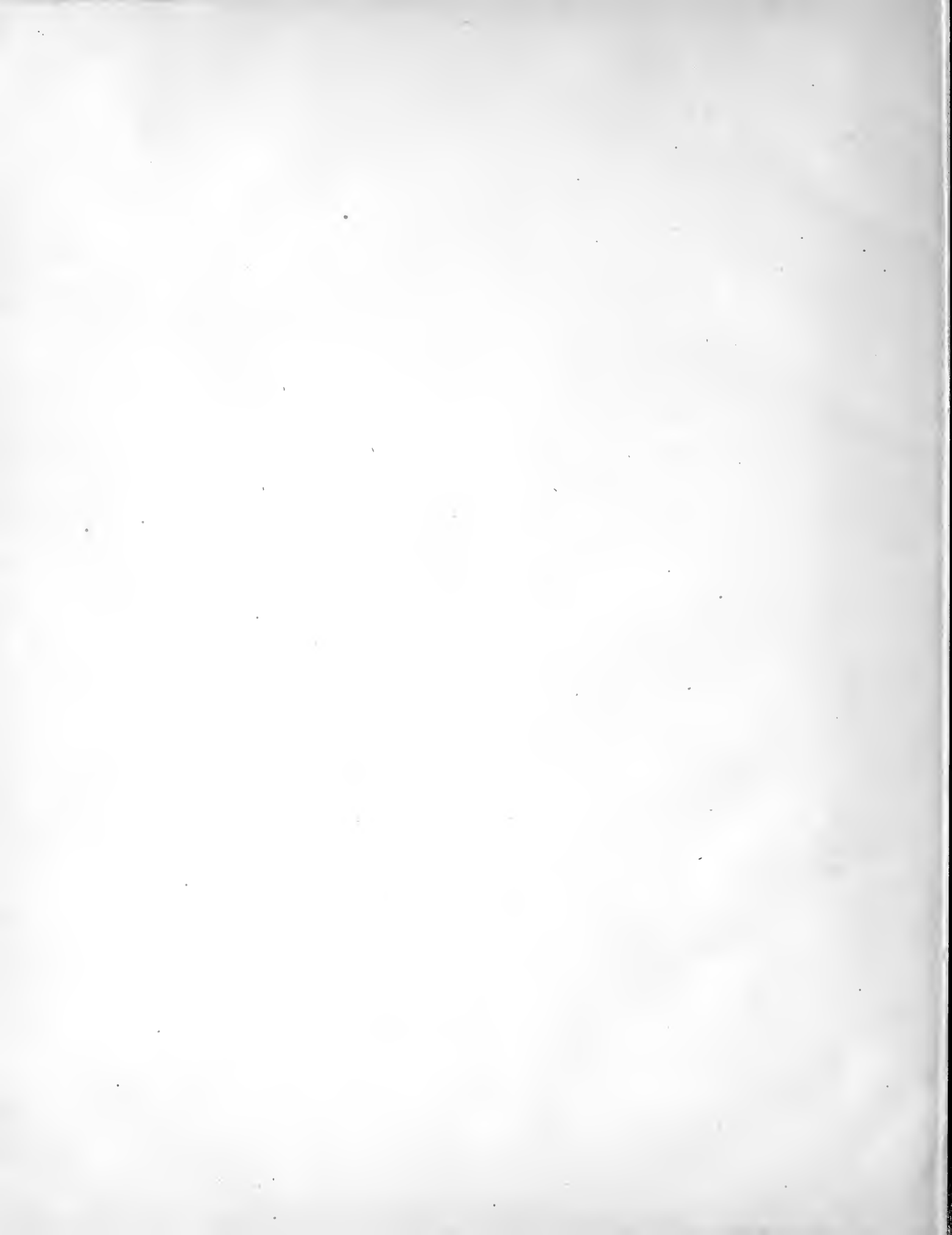
As it is considered that "Grammar Simplified" has arrived at the summit of improvement, and, of course, will undergo no farther alterations, it is put into stereotype; by which means the price has been reduced, and it is now afforded at 75 cents.

A constant supply of this work, together with "Adam's Latin Grammar Simplified," and a very excellent system of Book-keeping, by T. H. Goddard, on hand, and may be had, wholesale or retail, of the publisher, CHARLES STARR, No. 20 Slote-lane, New-York.

New-York, 13th September, 1822.







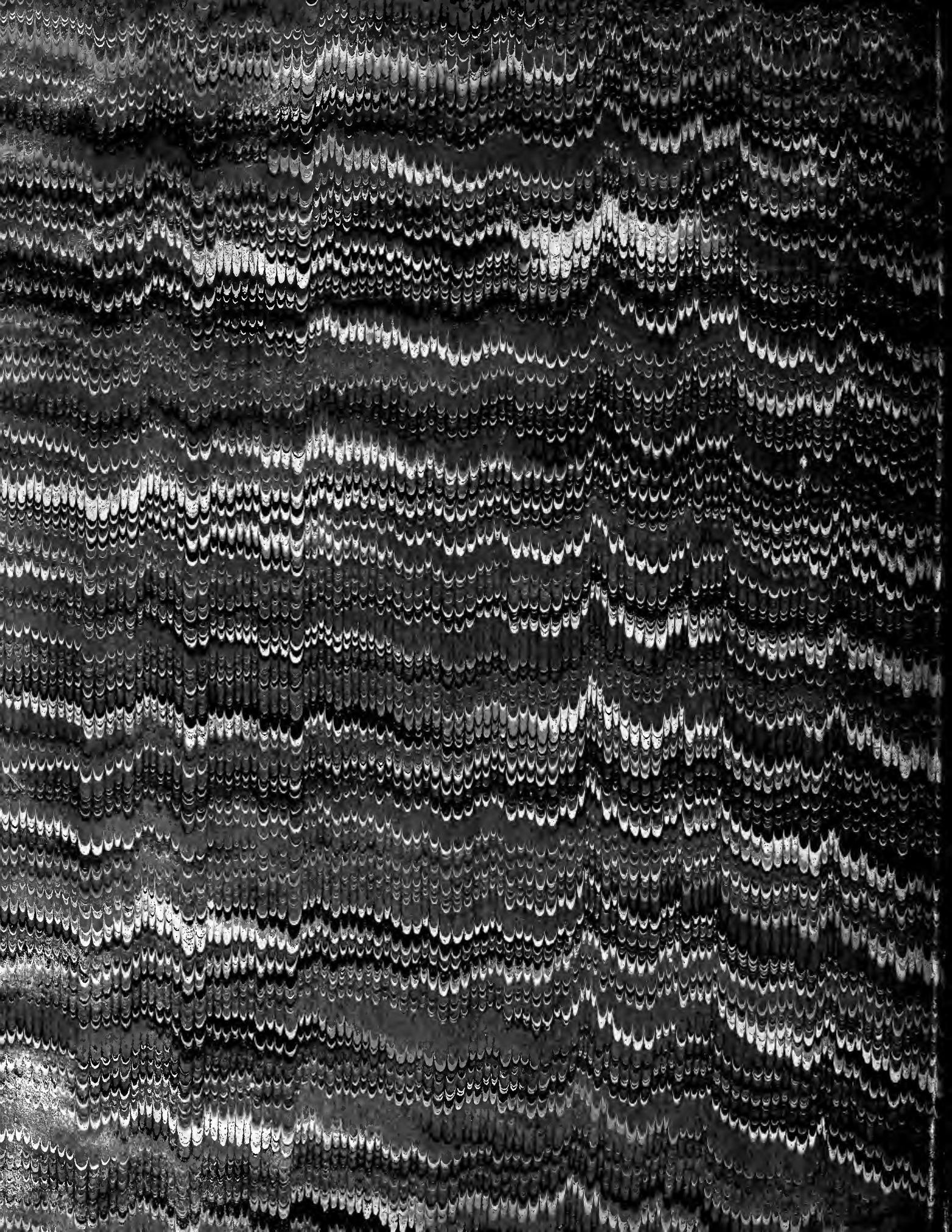




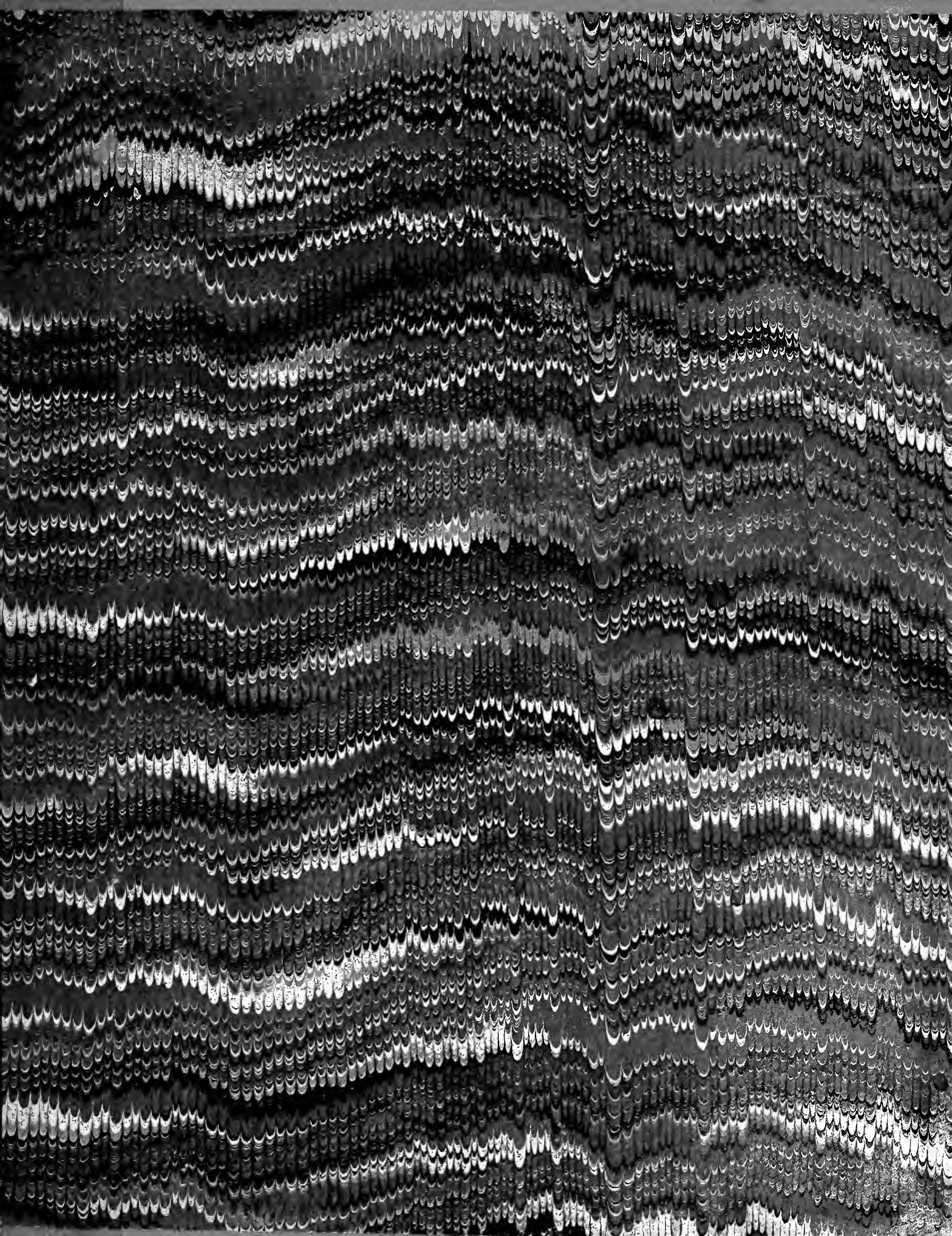




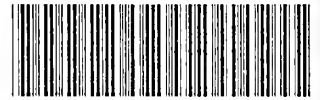








LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 003 238 352 A